oxford exam support

Third Edition Solutions

Upper-Intermediate

Workbook

Tim Falla

Paul A Davies

Paul Kelly

Helen Wendholt Sylvia Wheeldon

IELTSMatters.com

ارائه جدیدترین منابع زبان انگلیسی و آمادگی آزمون آیلتس

جنرال و آکادمیک در دو نسخه چاپی و فایل های الکترونیکی

English for International Opportunity

با آیلتس مترز رویاهات رو به واقعیت تبدیل کن

- @IELTSMatters
- @IELTS_Matters
- IELTSMatters.com

مجموعه تخصصي آيلتس مترز

آيلتس مترز نامي معتبر وشناخته شده













Third Edition Solutions

Upper-Intermediate

Workbook

Tim Falla Paul Kelly Paul A Davies
Helen Wendholt

Sylvia Wheeldon





Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, 0x2 6pp. United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2017

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

e-Book Edition

ISBN: 978 o 19 450668 7 First published in 2017

No copying or file sharing

This digital publication is protected by international copyright laws. No part of this digital publication may be reproduced, modified, adapted, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, to any other person or company without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above Vou must not modify, adapt, copy, store, transfer or circulate the contents of this publication under any other branding or as part of any other product. Vou may not print out material for any commercial purpose or resale. Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims all and any responsibility for the content of such websites.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Alamy Stock Photo pp.4 (teen shopping/Agencja Fotograficzna Caro), eldoctor/MBI, gelderfy man/STOCK/FULO99, 11 (Charlie Chaplin/Pictorial Press Lid.), 14 (calebrity and fans/O)O Images Lid.), 14 (celebrity and fans/O)O Images Lid.), 14 (celebrity and fans/O)O Images Lid.), 20 (students talking/HA Photos), 22 (teens in library/Picture Partners), 31 (tourists at snack stand/PhotoStock-Israel), 36 (protesters/David Grossman), 31 (tourists at snack stand/PhotoStock-Israel), 36 (protesters/David Grossman), 36 (women's 4ap yoster/Bolan Mikrovic), 36 (city fireworks display/RooM the Agency), 36 (New Years Eve poster/Laurel), 42 (whale watching/Kurt Lackovic), 46 (wake boarding/MARKA), 46 (Paragidder/mage/BOKER), 58 (perents and son/NOKY - Photononstop), 59 (teen comforting friend/Blend Images), 67 (edible worms/Marcia Rogozinski), 68 (teen and doctor/ROS Worturee)

 SuperStock), 69 (teens exercising/Frank Paul), 77 (teen on phonel/Jasminko Dirakovic), 101 (shopping mall/Kumar Sriskandan), 110 (Linkedin screen shot)

 M4OS Photos), 112 (Grant Danel/Arterra Picture Library), 116 (Gumtree screen shot) shot/MAOS Photos), 112 (Grant Danel/Arterra Picture Library), 116 (Gumtree screen shot)

Images pp.7 (teen in cafe/Bloom Productions), 10 (paparazzi/Caiaimage/Tom Merton). 11 (Audrey Hepburn/Sunset Boulevard). 12 (boy and maths equation/ PeopleImages), 14 (boy band fans/MARTY MELVILLE), 18 (hikers/Education Images), 21 (restaurant complaint/Image Source), 32 (business meeting/ Portra Images), 32 (group of friends/Compassionate Eye Foundation/Chris Ryan), 33 (street performers/Emad Aljumah), 40 (hotel/Atlantide Phototravel), 43 (river and boat/CHAPUT Franck/hemispicture.com), 44 (George Orwell/ Popperfoto), 45 (swimming with crocodiles/Robert Cianflone), 45 (snake massage/Uriel Sinai), 46 (gondola in Venice/Danita Delimont), 46 (boat trip Venice/Alexander Haase/EyeEm), 53 (street performance/Anadolu Agency), 54 (two teens/Westend61), 57 (students studying/Jeff Greenough), 66 (woman sleeping/Shuji Kobayashi), 74 (dancing at the beach/mihailomilovanovic), 75 (teen students/Jack Hollingsworth), 78 (UFO/Steven Peters), 79 (Orson Welles/Popperfoto), 84 (brochure distribution/George Doyle), 85 (teen voting/ Philippe Lissac/GODONG), 86 (protesters/Matt Cardy), 88 (Rosa Parks/Universal History Archive), 95 (woman using laptop/Petar Chernaev), 97 (littered beach/ Enrique Algarra), 100 (army soup kitchen/New York Times Co.), 102 (Chines restaurant/Glowimages), 102 (restaurant/Kathryn Barnard), 102 (Cotswolds village/joe daniel price), 102 (Scotland landscape/Loop Images), 103 (teen counting money/Daniel Sambraus), 108 (Jane Austen bank note/Bloomberg), 112 (bonnet ornament/Richard Cummins), 114 (online crime/Thomas Trutschel); iStockphoto pp.45 (Petra/Hanis), 63 (antibiotics/unalozmen); Japan National Tourism Organization p.41 (Japan hotel interior/Ryokan Hotel/ Japan National Tourism Organization); Lisa Hensel/Ben Moon collection p.55 (man and dog/Lisa Hensel/Ben Moon collection); NASA p.113 (astronauts/ NASA); Oxford University Press pp.5 (parliament, Vienna/Photodisc), 19 (Manhattan/Photodisc), 73 (salad making/Paul Bradbury), 98 (euro notes/ Chris from Paris), 112 (terrier dog/naten), 116 (notice board/Photodisc); Oxfam pp.87 (Oxfam logo/Oxfam), 87 (Oxfam providing water/Oxfam); Rex Shutterstock pp.9 (Jennifer Lawrence/Stephen Lovekin/Variety), 14 (Lady Gaga/ Craig Borrow/Newspix), 24 (girls talking/Isopix), 25 (friends chatting/Cultura), 35 (The Kite Runner/Dreamworks), 56 (The Duff/Guy D'Alema/CBS Films/Vast Entertainment/Wonderland Sound And Vision/Granville Pictures), 65 (Lee Hadwin/Steve Meddle), 89 (The Help/Dreamworks Pictures), 96 (woman at bookshop/Cultura), 108 (graduation ceremony/Caiaimage); Rosie Lee p.13 (girl vlogging/Rosie Lee); Shutterstock pp.8 (horoscope signs/Tom K Photo), 34 (American flag/AXL), 37 (girl at bus stop/Kaesler Media), 45 (dangerous walkway/flocu), 51 (family camping holiday/oliveromg), 51 (family holiday/ kurhan), 58 (parents arguing/threerocksimages), 58 (family argument/ Monkey Business Images), 62 (female brain/CLIPAREA I Custom media), 64 (woman running/lightpoet), 73 (chefs/Minerva Studio), 80 (security camera/pixinoo), 107 (woman buying food/NatUlrich), 107 (clothes shopping/ luminast); Simon Rawles p.116 (farmers in Ghana/Simon Rawles). Back cover photograph: Oxford University Press building/David Fisher

Unit		A Vocabulary	B Grammar	C Vocabulary	D Grammar				
I	p4	Verb patterns	Present and future tenses	Life events	Past tenses				
ntroduction			rotore tenses						
Unit		A Vocabulary	B Grammar	C Listening	D Grammar	E Word Skills	F Reading	G Speaking	H Writing
1	р8	What are they	Past perfect	Press intrusion	used to and	Position	Vloggers	Photo	A formal lette
Fame		like?	simple and past perfect continuous		would	and order of adjectives		comparison	
Review 1	p16								
•	p18	It drives me	Comparison	Keep calm!	Infinitives and	Preposition and	Solving crime	Role-play	Essay: for an
Problems		crazyl			-ing forms	noun phrases			against
Review 2	p26								
xam Skills Trainer 1	p28	Reading: Missing essay	sentences Listenin į	g: Short text multip	le choice Use of En	glish: Multiple-choi	ce cloze Speaking:	Role-play Writing:	A for and again
Customs and	p30	Express yourself	Modals: present and future	When in Rome	Past modals	American English	The Kite Runner	Topic-based presentation	A blog post
Review 3	p38								
4 Holidays and tourism	p40	Getting away from it all	Future continuous, future perfect and future perfect continuous	Trip of a lifetime	Future time clauses	Adverbs and adverbial phrases	Globetrotters	Interview and stimulus-based discussion	A letter of complaint
Review 4	p48								
Exam Skills Trainer 2	p50	Reading: Multiple of complaint	choice Listening : N	Multiple matching L	Jse of English: Key v	word transformatio	n Speaking: Photo	comparison Writin	g: A formal lett
5 Relationships	p52	Relating to people	Negative structures	Sibling rivalry	Articles and quantifiers	Phrasal verbs	Love is in the air	Photo description and comparison	An opinion essay
Review 5	p60								
6 Health	p62	Food science	The passive	Keeping fit	The passive: advanced structures	Compound adjectives	Future food	Role-play	An article
Review 6	p70								
Exam Skills Trainer 3	p72	Reading: Multiple	matching Listenin	g: Multiple choice \	Jse of English: Oper	n cloze Speaking : Pl	noto comparison W	'riting : An article	
7 Tall stories	p74	Truth and lies	Reported speech	Urban legends	Reporting verbs	Nouns and dependent prepositions	Media wars	Presentation	A story
Review 7	p82								
8 Change the	p84	Protest	Second and third conditional	Hashtag activism	Mixed conditionals	Verb patterns	The Help	Collaborative task	A report
Review 8	p92								
xam Skills Frainer 4	p94	Reading: Missing	sentences Listenin	g: True / false Use o	f English: Banked c	loze Speaking: Role	-play Writing : An o	pinion essay	
9	p96	Shopping	Emphasis	Moneyless living	Participle clauses	Money idioms	The history of the shopping mall	Photo comparison	A letter to a newspaper
Consumerism							rridii		
Review 9	p104								
	p106	Reading: Multiple Writing: A letter t	matching Listenin o a newspaper	g: Multiple matchin	g Use of English: V	Vord formation Spe	aking: Photo comp	arison and topic dis	cussion
Trainer 5 Cumulative Rev		p108 (Units I–1)							
	riew 2	p110 (Units I–3)							
Trainer 5 Cumulative Rev Cumulative Rev Cumulative Rev	riew 2 riew 3								



Introduction

Vocabulary



Verb patterns

I can talk about friends and friendship.

- 1 Choose the correct verbs to complete the sentences.
 - 1 Our teacher wondered / insisted / encouraged us to take part in the contest.
 - 2 The student blamed / denied / managed taking the money from his classmate.
 - 3 We all **reminded / persuaded / agreed** to meet in town at 8 p.m.
 - 4 Did you mention / spend / tell the idea of going out for a pizza to Jessica?
 - 5 Sean always denies / offers / mentions to help his friends.
 - 6 If you keep / expect / agree trying, you will finally succeed!
- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct infinitive or -ing form of the verbs in brackets.



When I go shopping for clot	thes, I spend time 1
(think) about what I'm goin	g to buy. I usually can't afford
2 (buy) the br	ands I really like. If I spend all my
money on one piece of clot	hing, I end up 3
(regret) it. However, if I reall	y like something, I do occasionally
decide 4(do)	that. I enjoy 5(look)
around the shops for cheap	er clothes and I always ask the
shop assistants 6	(give) me a discount.They
usually refuse 7	_ (offer) me one, but occasionall
I'm lucky and I manage 8_	(get) one!

	ally refuse 7 lucky and I manage 8	_ (offer) me one, b (get) o		
3 N	Natch 1–6 with a–f to m	ake sentences.		
1	Kate always begs			
2	Jake blamed			
3	Anna suggested			
4	This ice cream reminds			
5	Tom won't			
6	Our neighbour didn't th	nank us 🗌		
а	revising for the exams t	ogether.		
b	for finding his cat.			
c	his sister for their late a	rrival.		
d	mind waiting for us at t	he bus station.		

4 Complete the sentences with the verbs below.				e correct form		of the
accuse	apologise	beg	blame	insist	thank	

5

	vant warn	
	Amy and Ewan don't	
2	Our parentsus	against swimming in the
	river when we were on holida	y.
3	Chloë on using	her mobile phone in the
	cinema even though she was	
4	Alex didn't for	arriving late.
	We them to ta	
6	Lucy always ot	her people for her problems.
	ITom for helpi	
8	They the stude	ents of lying.
C	Complete the sentences with t	o do or doing.
1	He admittedb	adly in the exam.
2	Lucy has always enjoyed	exercise.
3	My dad persuaded me	the course.
4	The organisers thanked us for	the clearing up
5	Mark insisted on	_ his homework alone.
6	Mark insisted on Amy has promised	the washing-up.
th	complete the text with the con the verbs below. Sometimes be the fall go snow spend	oth forms are correct.
or or following the state of th	prefer on holiday mmer, so I'll never forget i n a skiing holiday last year. I was during our first ni sllowing morning, the snow hadn he coach from the hotel tried i ation, but the road was in a dang he road had started i hotel. I rember i otel window, hoping that they wo	ght at the hotel. However, the 't stopped 4 us to the ski erous condition. The snow on ice and we had to return to my time looking out of the
su or 3 — fold The state the hood the control of the state the hood the state the hood the state the state the hood the state the state the state the hood the state t	ammer, so I'll never forget ² n a skiing holiday last year. I was during our first ni blowing morning, the snow had he coach from the hotel tried ⁵ ation, but the road was in a dange road had started ⁶ otel window, hoping that they wo complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets.	in the mountains really excited when it started ght at the hotel. However, the it stopped 4 us to the ski erous condition. The snow on ice and we had to return to my time looking out of the uld clear the road!
su or 3 — fold The state the hood the control of the state the hood the state the hood the state the state the hood the state the state the state the hood the state t	ammer, so I'll never forget ² . n a skiing holiday last year. I was during our first ni lllowing morning, the snow hadn he coach from the hotel tried ⁵ — tation, but the road was in a dang- ne road had started ⁶ . the hotel. I remember ⁷ — to the word of the short was the word to word with the same the sentences with the verbs in brackets. Our teacher first taught us so	in the mountains really excited when it started ght at the hotel. However, the it stopped 4 us to the ski erous condition. The snow on ice and we had to return to my time looking out of the uld clear the road!
su on 3 _ fol Th sta th ho	Immer, so I'll never forget ² . a a skiing holiday last year. I was during our first ni llowing morning, the snow hadn he coach from the hotel tried ⁵ — ation, but the road was in a dang he road had started ⁶ he hotel. I remember ⁷ otel window, hoping that they wo complete the sentences with the he verbs in brackets. Our teacher first taught us so went on(exple	in the mountains really excited when it started ght at the hotel. However, the it stopped 4 us to the ski erous condition. The snow on ice and we had to return to my time looking out of the uld clear the road! The infinitive or -ing form of the woodbulary and then we vocabulary and then injoin the meaning of the tenses.
su on 3 _ fol Th sta th ho	ammer, so I'll never forget ² n a skiing holiday last year. I was during our first ni bllowing morning, the snow hadn he coach from the hotel tried ⁵ ation, but the road was in a dange re road had started ⁶ to the word was in a danger or which was a started ⁶ to the word was not a danger or which was not with the word with the words in brackets. Our teacher first taught us so went on	in the mountains really excited when it started ght at the hotel. However, the it stopped 4 us to the ski erous condition. The snow on ice and we had to return to my time looking out of the uld clear the road! The infinitive or -ing form of the woodbulary and then we vocabulary and then injoin the meaning of the tenses.
su on 3_ foi Th sta th ho	Immer, so I'll never forget ² na skiing holiday last year. I was during our first ni bllowing morring, the snow hadn he coach from the hotel tried ³ ation, but the road was in a dange ne road had started ⁶ totel window, hoping that they wo complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets. Our teacher first taught us so went on (explay Please remember when you go out tonight.	in the mountains really excited when it started ght at the hotel. However, the it stopped 4 us to the ski erous condition. The snow on ice and we had to return to my time looking out of the uld clear the road! The infinitive or -ing form of the wood of the wood of the unity the meaning of the tenses. (take) your keys with you
su on 3_ foi Th sta th ho	ammer, so I'll never forget ² n a skiing holiday last year. I was during our first ni llowing morning, the snow hadn he coach from the hotel tried ³ tation, but the road was in a dange ne road had started ⁶ totel window, hoping that they wo complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets. Our teacher first taught us so went on (explayers) (exp	in the mountains really excited when it started ght at the hotel. However, the it stopped 4 us to the ski errous condition. The snow on ice and we had to return to my time looking out of the uld clear the road! The infinitive or -ing form of the infinitive or -ing form of the unity the meaning of the tenses. (take) your keys with you (score) his first
su or 3 _ foi Th stath ho	ummer, so I'll never forget ² n a skiing holiday last year. I was during our first ni allowing morning, the snow hadn he coach from the hotel tried ⁵ tation, but the road was in a dange road had started ⁶ ne hotel. I remember ⁷ otto lewindow, hoping that they wo stowed to the window, hoping that they wo stowed to be shown in brackets. Our teacher first taught us so went on (explayer) had they work of the semember when you go out tonight. Jack will always remember goal for the school football te	in the mountains really excited when it started ght at the hotel. However, the it stopped 4 us to the ski erous condition. The snow on ice and we had to return to my time looking out of the uld clear the road! the infinitive or -ing form of the infinitive or -ing form of the uld clear the road! (take) your keys with you (score) his first am.
su or 3 _ foi Th stath ho	ammer, so I'll never forget ² na skiing holiday last year. I was during our first ni bllowing morning, the snow had he coach from the hotel tried ⁵ ation, but the road was in a dange re road had started ⁶ totel window, hoping that they wo somplete the sentences with the verbs in brackets. Our teacher first taught us so went on (explay Please remember when you go out tonight. Jack will always remember goal for the school football te We'll stop (haw	in the mountains really excited when it started ght at the hotel. However, the it stopped 4 us to the ski erous condition. The snow on ice and we had to return to my time looking out of the uld clear the road! the infinitive or -ing form of me vocabulary and then in the meaning of the tenses (take) your keys with you (score) his first am. e) a break at 11 a.m. and then
su on 3 _ foi Th sta th ho	Immer, so I'll never forget ² in a skiing holiday last year. I was during our first ni allowing morning, the snow had he coach from the hotel tried ³ ation, but the road was in a dange in a dange at the same had a started ⁶ otel window, hoping that they wo complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets. Our teacher first taught us so went on (explay Please remember when you go out tonight. Jack will always remember goal for the school football te We'll stop (haw we'll return to working on the	in the mountains really excited when it started ght at the hotel. However, the it stopped 4 us to the ski erous condition. The snow on ice and we had to return to my time looking out of the uld clear the road! The infinitive or -ing form of when the infinitive or -ing form of (take) your keys with you (score) his first am. The infinitive or -ing form of and (take) your keys with you (score) his first am. The infinitive or -ing form of and (take) your keys with you (score) his first am.
su on 3 _ foi Th sta th ho	ammer, so I'll never forget 2 n a skiing holiday last year. I was during our first ni llowing morning, the snow hadn he coach from the hotel tried 3 ni he coach from the hotel tried 5 ni he to ach from the hotel tried 5 ni he to he hotel. I remember 7 to tel window, hoping that they wo complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets. Our teacher first taught us so went on (explayers to he he hotel. I would be a so went on (explayers when you go out tonight. Jack will always remember goal for the school football te. We'll stop (have'll return to working on the We'll never forget	in the mountains really excited when it started ght at the hotel. However, the it stopped 4 us to the ski erous condition. The snow on ice and we had to return to my time looking out of the uld clear the road! The infinitive or -ing form of when the infinitive or -ing form of (take) your keys with you (score) his first am. The infinitive or -ing form of and (take) your keys with you (score) his first am. The infinitive or -ing form of and (take) your keys with you (score) his first am.
su on	Immer, so I'll never forget ² in a skiing holiday last year. I was during our first ni allowing morning, the snow had he coach from the hotel tried ³ ation, but the road was in a dange in a dange at the same had a started ⁶ otel window, hoping that they wo complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets. Our teacher first taught us so went on (explay Please remember when you go out tonight. Jack will always remember goal for the school football te We'll stop (haw we'll return to working on the	in the mountains really excited when it started ght at the hotel. However, the it stopped 4 us to the ski erous condition. The snow on ice and we had to return to my time looking out of the uld clear the road! the infinitive or -ing form of arme vocabulary and then sin the meaning of the tenses (take) your keys with you (score) his first arm. the a break at 11 a.m. and then a project (meet) our favourite actor.

e me to help her with her homework.

a next week.

5 Lalways a cycle to school.

2 Have you decided what time

4 Can you give this to Ben next time a you're seeing him?

a you're going out? 3 Tom is always talking a when the TV's on!

6 Do you play basketball a this Saturday?

a are you going

a isn't opening

a will leave

Present and future tenses

I can use different tenses to talk about the present and future.

	Choose the correct verbs to complete the sentences.	4 Let's go for another swim after we this drink.
	1 What do you usually do / are you usually doing at weekends?	a are going to finish b finish c will finish 5 anything interesting at the moment?
	 Next time I'm seeing / I see Jenny, I'll tell her I've seen you. We're learning / We learn about space travel at school this 	a Are you reading b Will you read c Are you going to read
	week.	6 You look cold. Iyou my hat to wear.
	4 What time does the World Cup Final start / is the World	a 'll giveb 'm givingc 'm going to g7 I'm so excited! My favourite singer here in June.
	Cup Final starting tomorrow? 5 Does your aunt work / Is your aunt working in the centre	a plays b will play c is playing 8 Be careful! That ladder isn't safe – you!
	of town? 6 My brother is always using / always uses my phone	a are falling b are going to fall c fall
	without asking. It's really annoying! 7 Are you going / Do you go to Ted's party on Saturday night?	5 Correct the underlined mistakes in the sentences. Use the correct present or future tense.
2	Complete the sentences with will or going to and the verb in brackets.	1 Una's favourite food is Chinese, but <u>I'm preferring</u> Mexica
	Have you finished your tea? Pass me your cup and (pour) you some more.	2 The clouds in the distance are really black – there will be a storm.
	Don't worry, we (phone) you as soon as we reach the campsite.	3 The school term is going to end next Friday; I can't wait!
	3 If it's already half past six, we (miss) the	4 Ellie <u>is practising</u> the guitar for an hour each day.
	start of the film. 4 It doesn't matter if you don't have a jacket with you.	5 The sun's just come out, so I think <u>I'm going</u> for a walk in the park.
	(lend) you mine. 5 Max has worked hard, so I'm sure he (do)	6 When you'll find out the final score, let me know.
	well in the exam. 6 I've decided that next weekend I (paint)	7 My sister has decided that she <u>doesn't eat</u> chocolate until the end of this month.
3	my room a different colour. Choose the correct answer (a or b) to complete the	8 Trains to London <u>will leave</u> here every half an hour.
	sentences.	
	1 Stefan is going camping	6 Complete the email with the correct form of the verbs in

brackets. There may be more than one possible answer.

Hi Fred!	
How are you? I hope you 1	(enjoy) the summer
holidays. I haven't done much so fa	er, but my aunt and uncle
2(come) next	week. They 3 (live)
in Canada with my cousins, so I 4_	(not see) them
very often. They 5	(stay) with us for a fortnight,
which is great! We plan to take the	em sightseeing as soon as they
6(arrive). The	y haven't been here before, but I know
they 7 (love) A	ustria. Let me know your news!
Florian	

b doesn't open c won't open

b every summer.

b you go out?

b you see him?

b am cycling to school.

c will you go

IELTSMatters.com

b every Saturday?

b clearly.

4 Choose the correct verb (a-c) to complete the sentences. 1 'How often ___ running?' 'Twice a week, usually.'

b do you go

2 'Is the café open today?' 'Yes, but it ___ at all on Sundays.'

3 Don't be late tomorrow – the bus ___ at nine o'clock.



Life eventsI can talk about my family and life events.

1	Match the ages (a–g) with the stages of life (1–7). 1 be an adult a 100+	5	Replace the underlined words and phrases with the correct form of the words and phrases below.
	2 be a centenarian b 60+ 3 be a toddler c 13–19		emigrate inherit learn to drive retire settle down split up
	4 be an infant d 40–60		My dad is looking forward to <u>finishing work</u> next year and
	5 be elderly e 1–3		having more time for his hobbies.
	6 be in your teens f 0-1		2 When my grandad passed away, my mum got his house
	7 be middle-aged g 18+		and some money.
			My sister is having driving lessons.
2	Complete the sentences with the adjectives and prepositions below. You can use the prepositions more than once.		My uncle and aunt <u>separated</u> last year after being married for fifteen years.
	addicted aware curious good happy obsessed sensitive shocked		5 I don't want to get married and have a family until I've had a chance to see the world.
	about at by of to with		6 My older brother moved to another country last year to
	1 Harry is money and he's always		look for work.
	thinking of ways of making it.		
	2 We weren't the hotel, and nor were	6	Complete the sequences of events with the phrases below.
	we pleased with the way the tour company handled the problem.		buy a house or flat get divorced get married go to university grow up pass away
	3 Don't say anything negative about her work because she's		1 retire, become a grandparent,
	very criticism.		2 fall in love, get engaged,
	4 Children are everything around them		3 start school, leave school,
	and want to know how things work.		4 get married, split up,
	5 My grandparents would be offended by the language used		5 be born, be brought up,
	on TV and the violence in films.		6 leave home, move house,
	6 I'm not very maths and always get	7	Complete the text with the correct form of the words below
	low marks in the exams.	,	•
	7 She says she isn't chocolate, but I		be buy career fall get job leave married settle split start study
	always see her eating it!		settle split start study
	8 didn't realise there was a problem, and wasn't the risks.		
3	Put the words below in the correct columns to form different life events.		
	a business a family divorced engaged home married school (x2)		
	get leave start	-	
4	Choose the correct prepositions to complete the sentences.	i	Not everybody does things in the same order. My uncle ' school at sixteen and got his first
	1 My grandmother passed over / through / away at the age of 88.		² a month later. Then he ³ a business and ⁴ engaged, and he got
	 Dan's parents split up / off / in when he was still a toddler. 		at seventeen! When he was 25, he
	3 Rachel was brought on / at / up by her aunt and uncle.		6 up with his wife, sold his business
	4 We grew up / over / on in a small village, and I loved living		and went back to school. Then he decided to
	in the countryside.		⁷ for a degree in medicine. At university,
	5 Many people get married and settle around / down / up in		he 8 in love with another student,
	their thirties.		and my cousin 9 born a year after
	6 My sister fell to / on / in love with a fellow student at		they left university. My uncle and aunt now work
	university, and they became engaged a year later.		as doctors, and they have 10 a house
	aniversity, and they became engaged a year later.		and " down near us. That's what I call
			changing your 12 – and your life!



Past tensesI can talk about events that took place in the past.

	continuous form of the verb in brackets.	continuous form of the verbs in brackets.
	1 (have) a shower when the postman (arrive).	Eve Hi, Will. 1 (you finish) reading that magazine yet?
	2 Sandra (drop) her bag while she	Will Not quite. 12
	(run) for the bus.	Paris. It's really interesting.
	3 He (read) the letter when he suddenly	Eve 3(you visit) France, then?
	(start) to laugh.	Will Lots of times – we 4(go) there on
	4 The sun (shine), so we	holiday for years. Recently, my aunt and uncle
	(decide) to have a barbecue.	5(buy) a house there so we'll go ever
	5 She (hurt) her finger while she	more often.
	(cut) some bread.	Eve Lucky you. I 6 (never visit) another
	6 Pat (live) in Greece when he	country. Anyway, I 7 (make) a cake if
	(meet) Hannah.	you'd like a piece?
2	Complete the sentences with the past simple or past perfect form of the verbs below.	Will That's really kind, but no thanks. I *(eat) biscuits all morning and I'm full!
	arrive be complete decide finish get go lose	5 Choose the correct verbs (a-c) to complete the text.
	not know pass put start take tell	
	1 After we eating, we to go to	Last night, I 1 to music when
	the shops.	my phone ² — ringing. It was my sister. She ³ — her bag and
	2 By the time they at the theatre, the play	sister. She 3 her bag and 4 enough money to get a cab
	3 He only realised he his keys when he	home. She 5_ to walk, but when
	to his front door.	it 6 to rain, she 7 to go to
	4 Jerry delighted because he all	a café. She * there and she wanted me to ask if Mum or Dad
	his exams.	walled the to ask il Multi of Dad would drive over and pick her up.
	5 When everyone a chocolate, she	would arred over and placement ap
	the box away.	
	6 They out for a pizza after they	1 a listened b was listening c had listened
	the project.	2 a started b had started c was starting
	7 I about the accident because no one	3 a was losing b lost c had lost
	me about it.	4 a didn't have b hadn't had c wasn't having
3	Choose the correct verbs to complete the sentences.	5 a was starting b started c had started
	1 My father worked / has worked as a policeman since he	6 a began b had begun c was beginning
	left / has left school.	7 a decided b was deciding c had decided
	2 Linda called / has called me this morning. She has decided /	8 a had waited b was waiting c waited
	decided to come out with us later.	6 Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets. Use the
	3 Tom never drove / has never driven a car because he's not	correct past tense.
	old enough.	1 'Why is your face so red?' 'I (sit) in the
	4 bought / have bought a new shirt at the weekend, but	sun all morning.'
	didn't wear / haven't worn it yet.	2 (try) to do this crossword all
	5 Pablo loves Sam Smith's new album, but I haven't heard /	morning and I still can't finish it.
	didn't hear it.	3 They were driving to the sea when the car
	6 spilled / have spilled water on my phone earlier; think	(run out) of petrol.
	I broke / I've broken it.	4 After they'd woken up, they (cook) a
		big breakfast.
		5 Rosa has eaten octopus, but she (not
		try) snails before!
		6 I (quess) what was incide the parcel

before I opened it.





What are they like? I can describe people's personalities.

1 Choose the correct answers to complete the horoscopes.

Find out what is going to happen in your life with this week's horoscope!



ARIES: You have been very 'industrious / eccentric lately and all your hard work will finally pay off this week.



TAURUS: You will have a bad experience on Wednesday, but a 2cruel / sympathetic friend will take care of you.



GEMINI: Although you are normally 3sociable / cautious, this week you will take a risk that could change your life for the better!



CANCER: Although you've been feeling 'insecure / sympathetic about your own abilities recently, news will arrive that will improve your confidence.



LEO: Your self-satisfied / outgoing personality will make you lots of new friends who will enjoy your company at the weekend!



VIRGO: Your 6 creative / untrustworthy talent will help you express your artistic personality this



LIBRA: You will receive news ...

2 Put the adjectives below in the correct columns.

bad-tempered bossy considerate creative cruel outgoing quick-witted selfless self-satisfied spontaneous stingy untrustworthy

Positive	Negative

3	1.02	Listen to four descriptions. Match the adjectives
	below v	vith descriptions 1–4. There are two extra adjective

below with descriptions 1–4	. There are two extra adjectives
cruel judgemental sponta stingy stubborn vain	aneous
Speaker1	Speaker 3
Speaker 2	Speaker 4
1 The speaker thinks that Ke	

- - a untrustworthy **b** bossy c considerate 2 Olivia's behaviour suggests she could be ___.
 - a cruel **b** cautious c insecure
 - 3 The speaker suggests that his grandmother is ___.
 - a judgemental b sympathetic c shrewd
 - 4 When people disagree with Max, he becomes ___.
 - a bad-tempered **b** cautious c cruel

5	Replace the underlined words in the text with the adjectives below.				
	considerate	eccentric	passionate		
	pushy quic	k-witted «	shrewd		

My grandfather ca	n seem ¹a bit	- VI 53/4
unusual in an amu	sing way at	
times	_ , but he says	
he just thinks diffe	rently. In fact,	
he's very 2good at	understanding p	eople and judging
situations	and ³ able t	o reply quickly to idea
that he doesn't ag	ree with in a clev	er way
Sometimes he can	seem ⁴ unpleasa	nt when he really want
something	, but reall	y, he's just ⁵ showing his
strong feelings ab-		
However, when pe	ople get to know	v him, they all agree
that he is a 6kind a	nd helpful	man.

6 Complete the sentences with the words below.

hard open quick self thick well

1	The students are always	behaved in their
	English class.	
2	Amber isn't very	minded and she doesn't lik
	trying new things.	
3	Sean is usually quite	working, but he didn't
	study a lot for these exams.	
4	He'switted a	and he gave fast answers to the
	questions in the test.	
С	You pood to be	elipped to be a politicion

- -confident, but he knows talent is not
- enough to succeed. 1 We went to a restaurant with Andy last night and he was

7 Complete the sentences with compound adjectives.

	rude and unpleasant to everyone! He's always been		
	b	m	
2	You'd have to	be very t	-s
	not to be upset by his insensitive remarks.		
3	She devotes all her time to her training. She's very ambitious		
	and s	-m_	when it comes

- to achieving her goals. 4 We saw a romantic comedy at the theatre last weekend which was fun and quite I_____
- 5 Lily was very s_ the exam because she'd studied a lot and knew she would
- 6 I've met quite a few relaxed people in my life, but I've never known anyone as e_____ as Mark.

1B

Grammar

Past perfect simple and past perfect continuous I can use the past perfect simple and past perfect continuous.

	Complete the sentences with the past perfect simple form of the verbs in brackets.	4	Complete the sentences with the words in brackets. Use the past perfect simple or past perfect continuous.
	He made a dentist's appointment because he(broke) a tooth.		1 I (never / snorkel) before Mia took me last year.
	2 We (not leave) enough time, so we missed our train.		2 Clara was annoyed because the book she'd ordered (not / arrive).
	3 After she (chose) a new skirt, she looked for a top to match it.		How long (you / play) the guitar before we met?
	4 couldn't make my new tablet work because (lose) the instructions.		4 By the time the shops opened, (they / queue) for nearly an
	5 When I checked the receipt later, I realised I (pay) too much for my shopping. 6 Sam forget to take a bat on the camping trip, but he kills his		hour.
	6 Sam forgot to take a hat on the camping trip, but luckily his friend (bring) a spare one.		5 I looked for my bag, but (I forgot) where I'd put it.
	7 The car went off the road because it(hit) a patch of ice.		6 Greg was tired last night because (he / play) basketball.
	8 You would have saved money if you (buy) that DVD in the sale.	5	Complete the text with the past perfect simple or past perfect continuous form of the verbs below.
	Complete the sentences with the past perfect continuous form of the verbs below.		date enjoy find not imagine live star think
	took hurt learn look travel try wait work We		Jennifer Lawrence was born in the United States in 1990. Once, before she became famous, she 'about being a doctor and 'beta beta beta being a doctor and 'beta being a doctor and 'beta being a spring break with her parents when a stranger spotted her and asked to do a screen test. Then things progressed fast. Not long after she 'work in commercials for MTV, she appeared in a TV series. Her family 'in Kentucky for many years, but they moved to Los Angeles when her career took off Two years before
	turned up outside their house. 6 My cousin to drive for over a year before she passed her test.		filming The Hunger Games in 2012, she 6 in Winter's Bone and been nominated for an Oscar. She Nicholas Hoult, her co-star from X-Men, for
	7 He eventually went to the doctor because his legfor a week.		two years when they split up in 2013.
	8 I to get a ticket to the show for several minutes when the website crashed.	6	Complete the second sentence with a past perfect tense so that it means the same as the first.
3	Write the words in the correct order to make sentences.		1 It was months since he'd played tennis.
	1 you / went / eaten / Had / you / breakfast / out / before / ?		He for months. 2 She ate her dinner and then went to bed.
	2 long / They / bus / waiting / the / hadn't / arrived / been / when		After she, she went to bed. 3 Zoe saved for ages and then bought a new watch.
	3 been/swimming/because/just/was/He/cold/he'd		Zoe before she bought a new watch. 4 Eric broke his arm so he couldn't go to school.
	4 before / London / he / living / to / Where / he / had / been / moved / ?		Eric couldn't go to school 5 We sat in the park for an hour and then it got dark.
	5 so / expected / presents / get / hadn't / She / to / many		By the time it in the park for an hour. 6 It was his first visit to Europe.
	6 before / for / long / married / they / dating / they / Had /		HeEurope before.

Press intrusion

I can identify the attitude of a speaker.



Revision:	Student's	Book	page 11

The season sandard 1

1 Complete the text with the words below.

harassed interest investigative journalists laws libel paparazzi scandal tabloid

from several

newspapers to dis	cuss the sto	ories about hir	n in the
2pi	ress. The sta	r denied takir	ng drugs and
sued the papers for	or ³	He als	so complaine
of being repeated	lly 4	by the	
5OI	utside his ho	ouse since pub	olication of
the stories. Further	rmore, he s	aid that priva	У
6n	eeded to be	strengthened	for all
celebrities. Howev	er, the judg	e ruled that t	ne tabloid's
story was 7	jou	rnalism rather	than just a
celebrity *	, an	d therefore it	was in the
public 9			

Listening Strategy

When you listen, pay attention to what words each speaker uses to express his/her attitude. Words with a similar meaning may have different connotations.

- 2 1.03 Read the Listening Strategy. Then listen to five dialogues and choose the word the second speaker uses.
 - 1 The second speaker describes the new person she met as shy / bad-mannered.
 - 2 The second speaker says that the singer's costume was creative / colourful.
 - 3 The second speaker describes the footballer as being shrewd / judgemental.
 - 4 The second speaker thinks the politician is open-minded / single-minded.
 - 5 The second speaker says that newspapers offer us propaganda / information.

3	1.03	For each speaker, choose the correct attitude (a-c)		
	Use your answers to exercise 2 to help you. Listen again			
	and check.			

1	The second speak	er was	when she	met	her friend	's nev
	partner.					
	a unimpressed	b bor	ed	c	enthusias	tic

- 2 The second speaker ___ the singer's outfit.
- a disapproves of **b** disbelieves c admires
- 3 The second speaker is ___ when talking about the footballer. a disapproving **b** unimpressed c uninterested
- 4 The second speaker is in her attitude to the politician.
- a critical **b** approving c disbelieving 5 The second speaker is __ with tabloid news. **b** surprised
- 4 Say these lines from the dialogues. Try to express the

a disappointed

- attitude in brackets. 1 Hey, did you enjoy the party? Who was there? Tell me all
 - about it! (enthusiastic) 2 Did you see the outfit that Rihanna was wearing at the
 - Music Awards? Rather bright, wasn't it? (critical) 3 I wish that footballer would keep his views to himself. He's always got too much to say about the other players.
 - 4 The Education Minister is now saying that teachers deserve a pay rise. That's a complete change of opinion! (surprised)
 - 5 I'm so tired of the tabloid news. It's very one-sided. (weary)
- 5 1.04 Listen and match speakers 1-4 with sentences A-E. There is one extra sentence.
 - A The speaker is angry about the lack of accuracy in news reporting.
 - B The speaker is critical of people's lack of interest in improving society.
 - C The speaker admits to an interest in celebrity gossip. D The speaker feels that news about celebrities is
 - unrealistic.
 - E The speaker feels that news reporting is pessimistic.

c impressed



used to and would

I can correctly use used to and would.

Complete each sentence with the correct form of <i>used to</i> and the verbs below.

b	e be have not ha	ave not use	not want
1	She	_ married, bu	t she isn't married any
2	Не	_ short hair, b	ut now it's really short!
3	The same of the sa		social media, but no
	they use it all the tin		
	'You want one now.'	a motorbik	e, did you?' 'No, but I
5	My favourite actor _ shaved it off.		a moustache, but h
6	I'm not scared of spi	ders, but I	when I
	was younger.		

2 Choose the correct answers (a or b) to complete the text.

BEFORE THEY BECAME FAMOUS

Before they became famous, many celebrities 1 have the superstar lifestyles we associate with them today. Glamorous actress and three-time Oscar nominee Amy Adams 2__ as a waitress when she was eighteen. And when Brad Pitt was employed by restaurant chain El Pollo Loco, he 3__ to dress as a chicken and wave at passing cars. Rapper and fashion icon Kanye West 4__ own such chic outfits when he worked for Gap, folding clothes. And Barack Obama 5_ one summer serving ice cream in Honolulu, Hawaii. Apparently the ice cream was so hard that it 6__ make his wrists hurt, and he confesses that, of course, he 7__ eat too much ice cream, so he doesn't like it any more!

1	а	wouldn't	b	didn't use to
2	a	would work	b	used to work
3	a	used	b	would
4	a	didn't use to	b	wouldn't

5 a spent b used to spend 6 a wouldn't b used to 7 a would b used to

3 Complete the second sentence with used to so that it means the same as the first.

1 Ten years ago, this shopping centre wasn't here. Ten years ago, this shopping centre didn't here.

2 I thought he once lived in New York. Didn't in New York?

3 When I was learning to play chess, I lost a lot of games. when I was learning to play chess.

4 Originally, he wanted to be a professional footballer. to be a professional footballer.

5 Wasn't she a waitress in the past? a waitress?

a sports car.

6 He's only had a sports car since he became famous. Before he became famous, he

4 Complete the text with used to or would and the verbs in brackets. Sometimes both are possible.

n the past, people 1	(find)
ame by being an actor, a sports star,	
singer and so on. And even very	
alented people 2	
know) that they'd only get a 'big break	₹ by
schieving something really special that	t brought
hem to the public's attention. Before t	he rise of
ocial media, people 3	(not
become) famous just for being famous	
There 4 (not be) cel	lebrities
ike Justin Bieber, who rose to fame aft	er
posting videos of himself online. But	
here's a downside - perhaps careers	100
(not rise) so fast, l	but
hey also 6 (not cras	sh)
so spectacularly; nowadays a damagin	g story
or photo can go viral on the internet in	n minutes.
And in the past, the famous at least ha	d some
privacy and 7(not r	need) to
oe available to their fans on Twitter 24	/7!

5 Complete the sentences with used to or would and the

	orrect forn ne possible			below. The	re may b	e more tha	n
bi	ite eat	know	make	not think	visit		
1	Ifood now		a lot	of meat, b	ut I prefe	r vegetarian	ij
2	We was a chil		m	ıy grandpar	ents ever	ry week who	en I
3	Eva went to H				ing the w	orld until sl	he
4	She		h	er fingerna	ls, but sh	e grew out	of it
5	My aunt _ student.			her owr	clothes	when she w	/as a
6	1		how to	speak Fren	ch, but I'v	e forgotten	nov
C	orrect the	underl	ined m	istakes in t	he sente	nces. Only ເ	ıse

- the past simple when it is the only correct answer.
 - 1 Most of us would believe in Santa Claus when we were younger._
 - 2 People wouldn't be so obsessed with celebrities before the internet.
 - 3 Would you use to enjoy eating vegetables as a child?
 - 4 He would study engineering for two years before he became an actor.
 - 5 My sister would hate having her hair cut when she was
 - 6 Would famous actors use to earn so much money in the past?

Word Skills

Position and order of adjectives

b Greek black small

I can use adjectives correctly.

1 Choose	the correct	answers	(a-c) to	complete	the sent	ences
----------	-------------	---------	----------	----------	----------	-------

- 1 On our trip, we visited a shop selling furniture.
- a old beautiful Chinese b Chinese beautiful old
- 2 We ordered some ___ olives with our meal.
- c beautiful old Chinese a small black Greek
- c black small Greek 3 My parents are buying a sofa next week.
- a new red comfortable b red comfortable new
 - c comfortable new red
- 4 Our favourite singer has just married a ___ politician.
- a middle-aged German tall btall middle-aged German
 - c German tall middle-aged
- 5 In the story, a girl finds the key to a ___ box.
 - a strange black antique b black strange antique
 - c strange antique black
- 6 Look at those ___ kittens they're so cute!
 - a white young tiny
- b tiny young white
- c young tiny white
- 2 Choose the correct answers (a or b) to complete the text.



There are more and more reports of child prodigies children with exceptional talents. One of these is the maths genius Cameron Thompson, As a 2 boy, he corrected his teacher by saying that zero isn't the lowest number, because she had forgotten about negative numbers. A(n) 3 girl called Priyanshi Somani won the Mental Calculation World Cup in 2010, held at the relatively 4 university of Magdeburg, And a 5 boy from Berlin started playing the violin at the age of two. Akim Camara has performed in front of 18,000 people, wearing a 6 __ suit and playing a baby-size violin.

- 1 a Welsh amazing
- 2 a clever four-year-old 3 a Indian young
- 4 a new German
- 5 a remarkable little 6 a black tiny
- b amazing Welsh b four-year-old clever
- b young Indian
- b German new
- b little remarkable
- b tiny black

3	Complete each sentence with the most appropriate two adjectives below in the correct order.						
	aujectiv	es below if	the corre	ctoraer			
	ancient	delicious	famous	Greek	Italian	purple	

tiny Turkish white young 1 The red and ____ _ flag has a moon and a star on it

2 The Parthenon is a(n) temple in Athens. 3 She picked up the boy to stop him from

crying.

4 Michelangelo was a(n)

5 Let's make a fruit salad - we can use these grapes.

VOCAB BOOST!

Adjectives which are only used after a linking verb (appear, become, feel, etc.) often describe feelings or begin with 'a' (asleep, alive, alone, etc.). Your dictionary should tell you if an adjective cannot go before a noun.

afraid /ə'freid/ adi. [not before noun]

1 feeling fear; frightened because you think that you might be hurt or suffer: Don't be afraid. . ~ of sb/sth It's all over. There's nothing to be afraid of now. Are you afraid of spiders?

- 4 Read the Vocab boost! box and the dictionary entry. Choose
 - the correct adjective. If both are correct, put a tick. 1 Don't be afraid / frightened; the dog won't hurt you.
 - 2 His only alive / living relatives live in New Zealand.
 - 3 Are you angry / annoyed because I'm late?
 - 4 It's a lonely / an alone life on that tiny island. 5 The glad / happy students celebrated the end of their
 - exams with a party.
- 6 Shut the door quietly your father's asleep / sleeping.

5 Complete the sentences with the words below. Use a dictionary to help you.

3 When I'm on holiday, I always feel

alone asleep aware content cross irritable sorry sure 1 | I can't be ______, but that looks like Jaime over there.

2 If your brother's still _____, he's going to miss breakfast!

on the beach and sunbathe.

that the date of the test had 4 No one was been changed.

- 5 Does your sister live ____ or with friends?
- 6 She seems really _____ _ about the accident.
- 7 He becomes _____ when he hasn't had enough sleep.
- 8 Emma looks really ______. What did you say to make her so angry?

Reading

Vloggers

I can understand an article about vloggers.

Revision: Student's Book page 14

1 Complete the sentences with the words below.

accessibility channel content feedback interaction platforms provider subscribers

- 1 Have you had any from users about what they think of the new site?
- 2 There's not enough communication or between the vlogger and his followers.
- to our blogs get regular updates every day.
- 4 Hopefully the new network will improve
 - to the internet in our neighbourhood.
- 5 His ideas are available on a number of media including the internet and traditional
- newspapers. 6 Sam has set up his own on YouTube
- and will start uploading videos soon. 7 His videos are very well made, but they need more
- to attract viewers.
- 8 The website is the largest Hollywood films for rent.



2 Read the text. What qualities do people who want to start a blog or vlog need?

Reading Strategy

Read the multiple-choice questions and all possible answers carefully. Find the part of the text that each question refers to. Read the answers again and choose the one that best matches the information in the text. Check that the other answers are incorrect.

3 Read the Reading Strategy. Then read the text again and choose the correct answers (a-d).

- 1 Kate Ross's job involves explaining to companies
 - a how they can employ bloggers and vloggers.
 - b what bloggers and vloggers do.
 - c how they can collaborate with bloggers and vloggers.
 - d which bloggers and vloggers earn the most money.
- 2 If you want your blog or vlog to be successful, you need
- a to write about passionate topics.
- b to really want to earn money.
- c to be interested in your viewers.
- d material that will catch people's attention.
- 3 If you want advertisers to notice you, you need to
 - a have lots of viewers.
 - b work for free.
 - c be well organised.
 - d talk about fashion.
- 4 The way the media presents the success that young bloggers and vloggers have had is
 - a mistaken.
- c enthusiastic. d positive.
- **b** accurate.

Surely blogging or vlogging must be one of the easiest ways of finding fame and fortune? All you need is a computer and a hobby to talk about, don't you? Well, although it looks simple, being a success in the blogosphere is actually a lot more difficult than it seems. Kate Ross has been advising brands on how to work with bloggers and vloggers, and believes that if you start a blog or vlog just to earn money, it isn't going to work. Kate says you need to be passionate about your topic and you need to provide your readers or viewers with interesting content. If you don't, your vlog or blog isn't going to get positive feedback and attract subscribers. You also need to be aware that cash isn't going to come rolling in overnight. Seventeen-year-old Rosie Bea, who has a YouTube fashion channel, says her blog only started attracting the attention of advertisers after she had put in months and months of unpaid work and built up a big fan base. Rosie was also

> So, while the tabloid press often talks about the instant success of young bloggers and vloggers, it isn't really instant at all. The people who are successful have done well because they are hard-working and passionate about what they do, and it is this dedication and passion that attracts subscribers and advertisers to them. The press is only interested in them once they are in the public eye, but they have achieved their celebrity status through hours and hours of hard work.

combining her vlog work with her law studies, and she advises vloggers in the same position to make sure that they plan carefully so that they have time to

do both things properly.

Speaking 1

Photo comparison I can compare photos and give opinions about fame.

Complete the sentences about photo A with the words below.	
looks most likely say something sort of sure	CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF
1 I can't be, but don't think that it's a concert.	INC Dalla
2 It like they're in the open air.	I same Direction was I
3 There's a railing in front of the fans.	A ALL CALL CECTOR A A
4 The group could be arriving at an airport, orlike that.	
5 The fans in front are friends as well, because	B
it seems they have made a banner together.	F WAY WAY A
6 I'd that they were excited about seeing their	
favourite band.	
2 Match the gaps in sentences 1–5 with the word and phrases below (a–f).	
1 In both photos, you can see	
2 The common theme in the photos is	
3 The main difference between the photos is that	
4 In the first photo, whereas in the second photo 5 Unlike the second photo, the first photo shows	4 1.05 Listen again. Which two of the points (a-c) does
a the celebrity must be there in the second photo	the student mention in answer to the question in the task?
b fame and celebrities	a They find their favourite celebrities very attractive.
c they're screaming and shouting	b The celebrities seem unreal until they see them in
d the fans holding a large banner	real life.
e the fans are waiting for the celebrities to arrive	c They get more excited because they're in a group.
f a group of fans	5 Look at the task and the photos below. Then read the
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	5 Look at the task and the photos below. Then read the questions (1–4) and write notes.
f a group of fans Speaking Strategy When you talk about a photo, try to use a range of	
Speaking Strategy When you talk about a photo, try to use a range of adjectives. For example, extreme adjectives can make	questions (1—4) and write notes.
Speaking Strategy When you talk about a photo, try to use a range of adjectives. For example, extreme adjectives can make your description more expressive.	questions (1–4) and write notes. Compare the photos. Then give your own opinion about
Speaking Strategy When you talk about a photo, try to use a range of adjectives. For example, extreme adjectives can make	questions (1–4) and write notes. Compare the photos. Then give your own opinion about
Speaking Strategy When you talk about a photo, try to use a range of adjectives. For example, extreme adjectives can make your description more expressive. Compare the photos. Then give your opinion about why fans get so excited about seeing their favourite celebrities. Describe a concert or a show that you've been to recently.	questions (1–4) and write notes. Compare the photos. Then give your own opinion about
Speaking Strategy When you talk about a photo, try to use a range of adjectives. For example, extreme adjectives can make your description more expressive. Compare the photos. Then give your opinion about why fans get so excited about seeing their favourite celebrities. Describe a concert or a show that you've been to recently. 3 1.03 Read the Speaking Strategy and the task above. Then listen to a student doing the task. Which four of the	questions (1–4) and write notes. Compare the photos. Then give your own opinion about
Speaking Strategy When you talk about a photo, try to use a range of adjectives. For example, extreme adjectives can make your description more expressive. Compare the photos. Then give your opinion about why fans get so excited about seeing their favourite celebrities. Describe a concert or a show that you've been to recently.	questions (1–4) and write notes. Compare the photos. Then give your own opinion about
Speaking Strategy When you talk about a photo, try to use a range of adjectives. For example, extreme adjectives can make your description more expressive. Compare the photos. Then give your opinion about why fans get so excited about seeing their favourite celebrities. Describe a concert or a show that you've been to recently. 3 105 Read the Speaking Strategy and the task above. Then listen to a student doing the task. Which four of the extreme adjectives below does she use? Match them with	questions (1–4) and write notes. Compare the photos. Then give your own opinion about whether celebrities should spend more time with their fans.
Speaking Strategy When you talk about a photo, try to use a range of adjectives. For example, extreme adjectives can make your description more expressive. Compare the photos. Then give your opinion about why fans get so excited about seeing their favourite celebrities. Describe a concert or a show that you've been to recently. 3 1.03 Read the Speaking Strategy and the task above. Then listen to a student doing the task. Which four of the extreme adjectives below does she use? Match them with adverbs 1–4. awful delighted ecstatic exhausted fascinated hilarious miserable starving terrible terrified	questions (1–4) and write notes. Compare the photos. Then give your own opinion about
Speaking Strategy When you talk about a photo, try to use a range of adjectives. For example, extreme adjectives can make your description more expressive. Compare the photos. Then give your opinion about why fans get so excited about seeing their favourite celebrities. Describe a concert or a show that you've been to recently. 3 1.03 Read the Speaking Strategy and the task above. Then listen to a student doing the task. Which four of the extreme adjectives below does she use? Match them with adverbs 1–4. awful delighted ecstatic exhausted fascinated hilarious miserable starving terrible terrified thrilled wonderful	questions (1–4) and write notes. Compare the photos. Then give your own opinion about whether celebrities should spend more time with their fans. A B B What is the common theme of the photos?
Speaking Strategy When you talk about a photo, try to use a range of adjectives. For example, extreme adjectives can make your description more expressive. Compare the photos. Then give your opinion about why fans get so excited about seeing their favourite celebrities. Describe a concert or a show that you've been to recently. 3 1.03 Read the Speaking Strategy and the task above. Then listen to a student doing the task. Which four of the extreme adjectives below does she use? Match them with adverbs 1–4. awful delighted ecstatic exhausted fascinated hilarious miserable starving terrible terrified thrilled wonderful 1 absolutely	questions (1–4) and write notes. Compare the photos. Then give your own opinion about whether celebrities should spend more time with their fans.
Speaking Strategy When you talk about a photo, try to use a range of adjectives. For example, extreme adjectives can make your description more expressive. Compare the photos. Then give your opinion about why fans get so excited about seeing their favourite celebrities. Describe a concert or a show that you've been to recently. 3 105 Read the Speaking Strategy and the task above. Then listen to a student doing the task. Which four of the extreme adjectives below does she use? Match them with adverbs 1–4. awful delighted ecstatic exhausted fascinated hilarious miserable starving terrible terrified thrilled wonderful 1 absolutely	questions (1–4) and write notes. Compare the photos. Then give your own opinion about whether celebrities should spend more time with their fans. A B B What is the common theme of the photos?
Speaking Strategy When you talk about a photo, try to use a range of adjectives. For example, extreme adjectives can make your description more expressive. Compare the photos. Then give your opinion about why fans get so excited about seeing their favourite celebrities. Describe a concert or a show that you've been to recently. 3 105 Read the Speaking Strategy and the task above. Then listen to a student doing the task. Which four of the extreme adjectives below does she use? Match them with adverbs 1–4. awful delighted ecstatic exhausted fascinated hilarious miserable starving terrible terrified thrilled wonderful 1 absolutely	questions (1–4) and write notes. Compare the photos. Then give your own opinion about whether celebrities should spend more time with their fans. A B B What is the common theme of the photos? What can you see in both photos?
Speaking Strategy When you talk about a photo, try to use a range of adjectives. For example, extreme adjectives can make your description more expressive. Compare the photos. Then give your opinion about why fans get so excited about seeing their favourite celebrities. Describe a concert or a show that you've been to recently. 3 105 Read the Speaking Strategy and the task above. Then listen to a student doing the task. Which four of the extreme adjectives below does she use? Match them with adverbs 1–4. awful delighted ecstatic exhausted fascinated hilarious miserable starving terrible terrified thrilled wonderful 1 absolutely	questions (1–4) and write notes. Compare the photos. Then give your own opinion about whether celebrities should spend more time with their fans. A B B What is the common theme of the photos? What can you see in both photos?



Writing

A formal letter

I can write a formal letter.

Preparation

- 1 Read the task and the letter below. In which paragraph (A–D) does the writer ...
 - 1 conclude the letter?
 - 2 state the reason for writing?
 - 3 make suggestions? _
 - 4 explain the reason for requesting the charity's presence?

You are helping to organise a charity week for your school. You want to invite someone who will give an inspiring talk to the students. Write a letter to the president of a local charity organisation, and suggest what topics the talk should cover.

Dear Sir or Madam

- A I am writing to invite you or one of your members to speak to students during our school charity week.
- B) Our school is organising a week next term when all the students will do something for charity. We would like to raise as much money as possible. I wonder whether someone from your organisation would 'consider making a speech to the school on this topic? 'In my view, it would really 'benefit us all to have someone inspire us before we take on this challenge.
- C I am sure you have your own thoughts on what it would be useful to cover. However, in addition to your own ideas, I would "fecommend including some advice on how to organise ourselves efficiently. In addition, it would be interesting to know which particular activities and events might be the most successful for raising money. Furthermore, we would appreciate some information on the best ways to advertise what we are doing. Finally, perhaps you could talk to us about the work of your charity. It would be inspiring to hear about how your organisation has *contributed* to society and made a difference to people's lives.
- D I hope you will consider my request to talk at our school about raising money for charity. § I look forward to hearing from you ⁷at your earliest convenience.

Yours faithfully

Chris Adams, Year 13

2 Read the Writing Strategy. Match the underlined formal expressions in the letter with the informal ones below.

as soon as possible be good for I can't wait to hear given suggest I think think about talking

3 Match the underlined informal parts of sentences 1–8 with formal phrases a–h.

- 1 I am writing to give you my ideas on our project.
- 2 Our school recycling week is happening next month.
- 3 I want to tell you which topics should be covered.
- 4 My reasons are <u>these</u>.
- 5 I hope you like my ideas.
- 6 I think a talk from you would be very motivating.
- 7 I'd like it if you would consider my request.
- 8 Please write back soon.
- a as follows
- **b** consider my recommendations favourably
- c takes place
- d put forward
- e I look forward to hearing from you
- f would like to suggest
- g I would be grateful
- h In my view,

Writing Guide

4 Read the task. Then plan your letter.

You are on a committee to organise a careers advice week for your school. You want to invite someone who will give an inspiring talk about the world of work. Write a letter to the manager of the local employment centre, inviting him/her and suggesting useful topics to cover.

- 1 Why would you like someone to come and talk?
- 2 Why will it be beneficial for the school and students?
- 3 What topics would you like to hear about?
- 5 Write your letter.

Writing Strategy

When you write a formal letter:

- Do not use informal words and phrases.
- Avoid contractions and abbreviations.

CHECK YOUR WORK

Have you ...

followed your paragraph plan?

started and finished the letter appropriately?

avoided contractions and informal language?

1

Review Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answers (a-c) to complete the

Vocabulary

	My aunt's rather She wears very weird clothes. a cautious	 The afraid / frightened children hid during the storm. We heard angry / annoyed voices from next door. There are a lot of alone / lonely old people in the world.
	2 Thanks for waiting. It was really of you. a stingy b passionate c considerate	 4 There were a lot of glad / happy faces at the party. 5 He picked up the asleep / sleeping child and put her to bed.
	3 Mark's quite a businessman. He tends to make good decisions.	Mark: /5
	a critical b selfless c shrewd 4 Patricia's so! She's always looking at herself in the mirror. a vain b cruel c affectionate 5 My friends weren't verywhen my budgie died. They just laughed! a bossy b sympathetic c outgoing 6 You're so!! wish you were a bit more flexible. a stubborn b spontaneous c creative Mark: /6	The music streaming service Spotify has over 20 million providers / subscribers worldwide. One of the funniest things about the show is the channel / interaction between the comedian and the audience. Which provider / subscriber offers the best service? The content / platform on the website isn't good. Does internet accessibility / feedback decrease the further you move away from your router?
2	Complete the sentences with compound adjectives formed from the words below.	6 Replace the underlined words with extreme adjectives.
	behave go mind skin temper work	1 That film was <u>very funny</u> .
	Nobody in my family likes visiting my grandfather. He's	2 We were <u>very tired</u> when we got home because we'd been
	really	travelling all day.
	2 I'm quite, so I don't usually get upset if	 My sister was <u>really angry</u> when I spilled coffee on her laptop.
	people are rude to me.	4 I'm <u>really hungry</u> because I didn't have time for breakfast
	3 Those children are very They do exactly	this morning.
	what they're told.	5 The little boy couldn't take his eyes off the magic show.
	4 My parents never judge people. They're really	He was <u>really interested</u> .
		6 The actress was very frightened when she heard that
	5 She studies for four hours every night. She's very	someone was stalking her
	6 Nothing seems to bother my best friend. She's very	Mark: /6
		7 Complete the sentences with the phrases below.
	Mark: /6	be sure looks like most likely say that some kind
3	Complete the sentences with a suitable media word.	1 They'rejournalists, or something like that.
	1 The paparazzi are always invading people's	2 It looks to me like a festival of 3 I can't, but I think it's Broadway.
	2 The singer sued the newspaper for after the	4 I'd she was enjoying all the publicity.
	article it published about her.	5 Itsome kind of castle, or maybe a palace.
	3 Press are in charge of what can and cannot	
	be reported in the news.	Mark: /5
	4 Investigative has led to a number of political	
	scandals being revealed recently.	
	Celebrities are always in the public Privacy prevented the identity of the victim	
	from being released.	
	Mark: /6	

Word Skills

4 Choose the correct adjective to complete the sentences.

Review Unit 1

Grammar

Girl

8 Complete the text with the past perfect simple or past perfect continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

(make) organis ² for the r (accep faceliff: too long meant tedious they als A good delivery ⁶ host ⁷ relieved tell) the	ers Neil Meron and Craig Zaidan 1_ films for years before they took over the attion of the Oscars ceremony in 2012. In fact, they
	Mark: /8
9 Choos	e the correct words to complete the dialogue.
	times both answers are correct.
Girl Mum	Tell me about your best friend at school. There was a girl called Jo. She 'lived / would live across the road from me and we 'awere / used to be best friends for about five years.
Girl	³ Did you use to go / Would you go to the same school?
Mum	Yes, but she was a year younger than me, so we 'didn't use to hang out / wouldn't hang out together at school. But we 'used to see / would see each other every weekend.

Eurovision was on, we ⁷used to watch / would watch

Mum Oh, the usual things like listening to music. But when the show together. That's what I remember most about her.

What 6did you use to do / would you do?

Mark:

Use of English

from her goals.

10 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Write up to five words, including the word in brackets.

1	My parents don't trust us. (are)	
	My parents think wepeople.	
2	My younger sister doesn't deny that she only has her studie	
	on her mind – nothing distracts her from her goals. (is)	
	My younger sister admits that she	
	when it comes to her studies – nothing distracts her	

3	I last saw Anna when we were at school, so I hardly	
	recognised her. (hadn't)	
	I hardly recognised Anna because I	_ We
	were at school	

4	He started singing many years before he got a recording
	contract. (had)
	He only got a recording contract after he
	many years

5	It was a habit of mine to bite my nails when I was a child.
	(used)

	As a child,	my nails.	
6	In the past, people we	ren't so keen on b	ecoming famous.

(didn't)	
People	so keep on becoming famous

Mark: Total:

I can ...

Read the statements. Think about your progress and tick one of the boxes.

= I need more practice. *** = No problem!

** = I sometimes find this difficult.

	*	**	***
I can describe people's personalities.			
I can use the past perfect simple and past perfect continuous.			
I can identify the attitude of a speaker.			
I can correctly use used to and would.			
I can use adjectives correctly.			
I can understand an article about vloggers.			
I can compare photos and give opinions about fame.			
I can write a formal letter.			

Problems

Vocabulary



It drives me crazy!

I can describe feelings and emotions.

1	Match the adje	ctives below	with the sentence	es
---	----------------	--------------	-------------------	----

amused ashamed content envious furious stunned

- 1 'I'd prefer not to talk about it. I'm still in a state of shock.'
- 2 'That was really funny! I couldn't stop laughing!'
- 3 'I've never been treated like this before! I shall be speaking to the manager!'_
- 4 'Anybody could have done it. She was just lucky!'
- 5 'We were very pleased with our presentation.'
- 6 'How could I have forgotten her name? I feel so embarrassed about it!'
- 2 Replace the underlined adjectives with the adjectives below. disappointed indecisive miserable thrilled upbeat



3 Choose the correct adjectives to complete the sentences.

- 1 We felt upbeat / humiliated after losing the match against our biggest rivals 10-0!
- 2 My mum says she feels frustrated / anxious in her job because she can't achieve what she wants.
- 3 I was irritated / thrilled by Sara's constant questions about my private life.
- 4 There was a positive, furious / upbeat feeling after the head teacher's speech.
- 5 Amy is envious / disillusioned of my new coat and she wishes that she had bought it first!
- 6 Harry has bad memories of his childhood and he is very hysterical / bitter about it.

4 Match the adjectives with the definitions.

bitter disappointed disillusioned exasperated hysterical stressed

- 1 Feeling irritated and angry about a situation that you can't do anything about._
- 2 Unhappy because something or someone wasn't as good as you expected.
- 3 Feeling extremely worried and nervous about something, especially something you are expected to do.
- 4 Unable to control your feelings because of extreme fear or excitement.
- 5 Feeling unhappy because you discover the truth about someone or something.
- 6 Feeling or showing anger, hurt or resentment because of bad experiences or treatment.

5 Match 1-9 with a-i to form idioms.

- 1 lose a your top
- 2 blow
- b two minds about something
- 3 be on c on your nerves
- 4 be green d your hair out
- 5 be down e face
- 6 be in
- f edge
- 7 be over g with envy
- 8 be tearing h in the dumps
- 9 something gets i the moon

6 1.06 Listen to four dialogues. Complete the sentences with an idiom from exercise 5.

- __ about going to Sam's party. 1 Jack says he ___
- 2 Ann says she about her exam results.
- 3 The boy says that Meg's complaining
- _ about not getting the summer job.

7 1.06 Listen again and choose the correct answers (a-c).

- 1 If Jack doesn't go to Sam's party, Jack will ____.
 - a blow his top b tear his hair out
 - c lose face
- 2 When Kate hears about Ann's results, she will ____. b be over the moon
 - a be on edge
 - c be green with envy
- 3 The girl thinks that Meg ___ over unimportant things.
 - a tears her hair out h is over the moon
- c blows her top
- 4 The boy says that Ewan was ___ about the interview he was going to.
 - a losing face b on edge
- c tearing his hair out

Grammar

ComparisonI can make comparisons.

1	Complete the sentences with the c superlative form of the adverb in b		4 Choose the correct answers (a–c) to complete the sentences
			1 A quarter is much as 25%.
	1 Who works (hard)	out or all the students in	a nowhere near as b almost as c just as
	the class?		2 A second is long as a minute.
	2 There isn't much traffic today, so		a not quite as b nothing like as c nearly as
	3 If you ate (slowly).	you'd enjoy your food	3 Eleven forty-five p.m. is late as midnight.
	more! (Slowly),	you a enjoy your rood	a nearly as b nowhere near as c just as
	4 The Swiss tennis player performe	d (all)	4 Ninety-eight cents is much as a euro.
	than his opponent and won the t		a just as b not quite as c nothing like as
	5 Erik did (badly) tha		5 Spain is cold as Iceland.
	test.	III ala III triis montris	a nearly as b almost as c nowhere near a
	6 The world's population is growing	z (fast)	6 The UK is big as Russia.
	today than at any point in history		a almost as b nothing like as c not quite as
	7 My grandparents' house isn't far, (near) of all my fan	but my aunt lives	5 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.
	(riear) or all my ran	my.	1 That was the worst holiday I'd ever had!
2	Match the two halves of the comp	arative sentences.	I'd never had a holiday as one!
	1 He's far more handsome in real	a the colder it will be.	2 If we walk fast, we'll get there quicker.
	life	b than I'd wanted to.	Thewe'll get there.
	2 The harder you work,	c the cheaper the	3 Fast food used to be less healthy.
	3 I spent more this week	tickets will be.	Fast food is used to be.
	4 The later you leave tonight,	d than on TV.	4 My jacket is nothing like as comfortable as yours.
	5 The sooner we book,	e than it looks.	Your jacket is far mine.
	6 This ice cream is less tasty	f the more we feed it!	5 Your brother is the same age as me.
	7 Our cat's getting bigger and	g the better you'll do.	Your brother is justI am.
	bigger	,	6 Indian food is far spicier than English food.
-			English food is nothing Indian food.
3	Write the words in the correct orde	er to make comparative	
	sentences.		6 Complete the text with the words below.
	1 that / one / than / is / This / expe slightly	nsive / cap / more /	as far fewer like more nowhere than the
	2 will / than / much / a / taxi / long	er / take / The bus	Thanks to some films and TV shows, and certain types of music, mar people still regard big cities in the USA as violent and crime-filled. However, recent reports show that they're 1 near as
	do/far/than/My/scarier/I/f	inds / brother / spiders	dangerous as some people believe. Statistics for violent crime are nothing ² as bad as they were in the 1990s; the
	4 lot / cycling / energetic / Walking	/ is / than / less / a	chance of being robbed or murdered is much lower 3in the 1990s when those crimes were far 4 common
	5 little / planned / Her / than / a / s longer	he'd / shopping / took /	than they are today. There are also slightly 5 property crimes than forty years ago, with a drop of 2.8% being reported by some sources. Many inner-city areas once considered 'no-go' zones
	6 today / even / be / tomorrow / ho than /!	otter / Apparently / will /	are 6more pleasant than they used to be, and cities generally are just as safe 7anywhere else in the worl The problem, of course, is that the more the media focuses on the fe serious crimes, 8more afraid people become.
	7 news/you/surprised/I/the/le	ess/than/was/no/at	more draid people become.
			Many D. Seption

2C

Listening

Keep calm!

I can understand emphasis.

1 1.07 Listen to sentences 1–5 and underline the emphasised word(s).

- 1 Do you want tea or coffee?
- 2 'Is your number 07765?' 'No, it's 07756.'
- 3 That one's my jacket. The leather one.
- 4 'Is your name Mike?' 'No, it's Mark.'
- 5 Is that yours or mine?

Listening Strategy

When you listen, pay attention to the words that the speaker emphasises. Usually, a speaker uses emphasis:

- **a** to highlight new or important information, for example: I've lost my bag. It's a <u>cotton</u> bag, with <u>stripes</u>.
- b to put contrast two alternatives, for example: Was it black or brown?
- c to contradict what someone else has said, for example: Well, that's not my bag.
- 2 1.08 Read the Listening Strategy. Listen to six dialogues. Underline which words are emphasised in each one. Match each one with a reason from the Strategy (a, b or c).

- A Which are your shoes?
 - B The ones with the laces.
- 2 ___ A | think | need a new phone.
 - B What? You've got a new phone?
 - A No, I said I need a new phone!
- A Can you give me a description of the thief, please?
- B Yes, he was tall and he had blonde hair.
- A Shall we go shopping tomorrow or on Wednesday?
- B Let's go tomorrow.
- b Let's go tomorrow
- A Don't forget your keys.
- **B** But they're not my keys. They must be Edward's.
- A I'll get your suitcase. Is it the black one or the brown one?
- B The brown one.
- 3 Look at the lines of dialogue. Underline where the emphasis should go and say which reason from the Listening Strategy it matches with.
 - 1 Do you want a sandwich or a burger?
 - 2 A Is your locker number 14?
 - B No, number 40.
 - 3 Is this your drink or mine?

- 4 Have you seen my scarf? It's green. Light green.
- 5 A Are you going to the leisure centre this afternoon?
 - B No, this morning.
- 6 My house has a red door and it's number 5.
- 4 1.09 Listen and check your answers to exercise 3.



5 1.10 Listen to the dialogue between two friends, Josh and Max. Choose the correct answers (a–d).

- 1 At the beginning of the conversation, Josh
 - a ignores Max.
 - b feels ill.
 - c pretends that everything is OK.
 - d wants to go to chemistry class.
- 2 Josh tells Max
 - a that he's sorting out a problem.
 - $\boldsymbol{b}\;$ that he's made some new friends.
 - c that he's done something he regrets.
 - d not to tell his father.
- 3 Max's view is that
 - a Josh's dad will be angry with him.
 - **b** Josh's new friends are cool.
 - c Josh should confess to his father.
 - d Josh should challenge the boys.
- 4 Josh feels
 - a his father doesn't like Max.
 - b grateful for Max's support.
 - c he can't do anything about the situation.
 - d Max's advice isn't helpful.



Infinitives and -ing forms I can use infinitives and -ing forms.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs	4 Choose the correct words to complete the text.
in brackets.	CONTRACTOR DESIGNATION
1 I don't remember (meet) him before,	No.
although he looks familiar.	Mark III
2 It's very rude when people stop (talk) to you	
and answer their phone.	
3 They meant (get) off the bus at the last	
stop, but they missed it.	
4 Do you regret not (have) a party for your	
birthday?	
5 My brother graduated from university and went on	
(become) a vet.	
6 If you stopped (think) for a moment, I'm	
sure you'd find a solution.	Many people would rather 'say / not say anything when
7 He tried not (make) too much noise when	they experience bad service. For example, in a restaurant, they would sooner 'pretend / not pretend that their meal
he got home.	was fine, even if they didn't really enjoy it. But why 3wait /
Complete the sentences with the -ing form of the words	not wait until afterwards, then tell your friends about it?
below.	Surely you'd sooner 4let / not let those responsible know that there's a problem? For some reason, many of us think
drive finish go keep live lose make	we'd better 5cause / not cause a fuss, but would you really
	rather ⁶ leave / not leave a shop or restaurant feeling that
1 Sam discovered that in a city was more	you've been cheated? Why 7be / not be more assertive next
expensive than in a village. 2 to the gym twice a week will make a real	time you have a genuine complaint?
difference to your fitness.	5 Choose the correct answers (a–d) to complete the sentences.
the match was disappointing after the team	
had tried so hard.	1 If it's still snowing, why a cab home?
4 My mother taught me that fun of other	a not getting b get c not get d getting
people isn't nice.	2 I'm sure my parents would rather to the theatre than a
5 has become quite expensive as the cost of	night club!
fuel continues to rise.	 a going b not going c not go d go in the corridor isn't allowed.
6 Don't worry about the cleaning now – we	a Running b Not run c Run d Not running
can do it later.	4 She didn't mean so much salt in the curry.
7cool in the summer can be a real problem in	a to put b putting c not to put d not putting
some countries.	5 Did you see anyone suspiciously last night?
	a not behaving b to behave c behaving d not behave
Match the sentence halves. Then complete the sentences	6 Would you sooner at home this evening or go into town?
with the -ing form or the infinitive of the verbs in brackets.	a staying b stay c to stay d not stay
1 If you heard someone	
2 We have to get out – can't you hear	6 Rewrite the sentences so that they have a similar meaning.
3 It was a really strong earthquake; we felt	Use the word in brackets.
4 We stood and watched the parade	1 If you don't understand, you should ask the teacher. (why)
5 Did you see him 6 I was horrified to feel	
State of the state	2 Would you prefer chips or potatoes? (rather)
a the ground (shake) for several minutes.	
b(score) that last goal? It was amazing!	3 It wasn't her intention to upset anyone. (mean)
c something (crawl) slowly up my leg as I was	4 Charles and the analysis of the factor of
lying in bed.	4 She forgot to post the parcel yesterday. (remember)
d(shut) the door then he must have already	E Don't spond ages on the computer before had /hattan
gone out. e the fire alarm (ring)?	5 Don't spend ages on the computer before bed. (better)

(come) down the street while everyone

cheered.

6 Alex won't talk to him since they fell out. (stopped)

Word Skills

Preposition and noun phrases *I can use preposition + noun phrases.*

1	Choose the correct answers (a–c) to complete the sentences.	4 Correct the mistakes in the phrases in bold. Tick the correct sentences.
	It looks as though that shop has closed it's been empty for weeks now.	It was a long day and at the time I got home I was exhausted.
	a for now b for one thing c for good	2 The show doesn't start until eight, so we should still get
	2 The instructions should be clear, but if you're, just ask	there in time
	someone. a in doubt b in vain c in effect	
	3 It was a horrible journey, but we got there	up
	a in all b in the end c in that case	identity.
	4 If the staff here think you're, they'll ask to see some	5 I didn't realise it by the time, but the girl we met last night
	identification.	was Terry's sister.
	a under arrest b under the impression c under age	6 We should have moved house by the end of the month.
	5 There's too much to risk failing this exam.	
	a at stake b at fault c at the	
	moment	5 Choose the correct words to complete the text.
	6 Do you have more with your father or your mother?	How do you stop being friends with
	a in any case b in common c in that case	someone you no longer feel close to?
2	Write the words in brackets in the correct order to	If you've been friends for 'a while /
	complete the sentences.	one thing, you may simply not have anything in 2effect / common any
	1 We were (the / impression / party / the / under / that)	more. It doesn't mean anyone's at
	had been cancelled.	Fault / last. If you've tried in *vain /
		control to make things work, maybe it's
	2 Dan and Mia (a / have / for / been / while / dating).	best to end the friendship. Naturally, you don't want to hurt the
		other person, and if you're in any stime / doubt, don't say or do anything you might regret. Perhaps your friend doesn't realise
	3 I'm afraid (a / moment / I'm / busy / the / bit / at).	how you feel – they may be under control / the impression
	Can I call you back?	that everything's fine. You could talk to them and suggest not
		seeing each other for a few weeks, and in 'time / fact you'll know
	4 I was going to buy the brown boots, (on / decided /	whether you want your friendship to continue or not.
	second / but / thoughts / I) to get the black ones.	
	5 'What do you like about living in Barcelona?' 'Well,	VOCAB BOOST!
	(one / a / got / for / thing / it's) great nightlife.'	When you come across a new preposition + noun phrase,
	(22) = 1 0201 101 1 0111 B 1 103 B 1030 11 B 1011 C	record it in your notebook under the preposition.
	6 I'll lend you this book (give / on / you / that / it / condition)	<u>by</u> : chance, mistake <u>with</u> : (any) luck <u>for</u> : a while
	back next week.	Then write an example sentence for each preposition +
		noun phrase to help you remember it:
3	Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.	With any luck, my parents will let me stay over at my friend's house tonight.
)		THERA S HOUSE LOTIIGHT.
	1 The ticket office sold me a return rather than a single mistake.	
	2 Do you think Petra didn't invite us to her party	6 Read the Vocab boost! box. Complete the sentences with
	purpose?	an appropriate noun and your own ideas.
	I heard Finn got trouble for not doing his homework.	1 Although I haven't done it for a, I used to
	4 Tina's not very keen on rock music – fact, she can't	like
	stand it!	2 At the, my favourite song is
	5 I'd like to see you later, but course, if you're busy,	3 The last time I was late for something was I couldn't get there on because
	that's fine.	4 In the future, I'd love to With any
	6 No one was really fault. It was just an accident.	, I'll be able to.
		5 There are several reasons why I like my best friend. For one
		he/she

Reading

Solving crimeI can understand a text about different solutions to crime.

Revision: Student's Book page 26 1 Complete the newspaper article with the words below combat commit cut petty prevention rate violent wave	Reading Strategy When matching questions with texts, remember that the key words from these questions may not appear in the text.
Statistics show that the local police force has 'rime by 15%. However, this fall has only affected 2 crimes such as murder. The crime 3 for 4 crimes such as shoplifting has gone up. This crime is affecting small shops and businesses. The police are working with shop owners to help them 6 crime. They want them to install security cameras and participate in other crime? efforts. Shopkeepers, however, are asking for more severe punishment for people who 8 crimes and break the law.	The same information may be expressed in different words. Read the Reading Strategy. Match paragraphs A–C with questions 1–6 below. Each paragraph may be matched with more than one question. Which paragraph mentions 1 the disadvantages of a new technology? 2 successful results from new technology? 3 stopping criminals from getting away? 4 a reduction in UK crime? 5 police ignoring crime in some cases? 6 a possible increase in crime rates?
Police forces have always used technology to help them combat crime, but as collecting data and storing it becomes much easier, more and more police forces are using it to improve crime prevention and therefore to	rime prevention software called PredPol helps the police predict where ness are likely to occur. The software analyses years of data on the titon, time and nature of crimes committed and predicts where and an crime is most likely to occur in the future. Police officers receive information on the computers in their cars and they then spend more in these areas. As a result, the increased police presence in these hibourhoods has cut crime significantly. Crime figures for one area of Angeles, USA, were reduced by 12% in 2011 when police officers of crime prediction software. In the same year, burglaries were cut by k in Manchester, UK, using the same methods.
B A teclean	is well as software that predicts crime, companies are also developing notingly that will help police patrolic catch criminals before they can re town. By combining information such as the places where crimes juently take place with the routes that allow the fastest escape, puters will direct patrols to where they can arrest criminals.
red rep crir offit the	owever, although the makers of this technology claim it will help uce crime rates, some people are not so sure. Not all crime is orted and if the police just focus on the neighbourhoods where most ne occurs, they will neglect others. Some experts claim that if police zers just pay attention to the information that has been stored in r devices, crime rates could actually rise in some areas.

Unit 2 Problems 23

2G

Speaking

Role-play

I can use diplomatic language in a discussion.



- Match the sentence halves to make phrases for being diplomatic.
 - 1 Can I have a word
 - 2 Well. it's
 - 3 What did you have
- 4 I thought
- 5 You must
- 6 So, how can
- 7 I didn't want to bring
- 8 You should have said
- 9 And could we possibly

phrases in exercise 1 that you hear.

- a feel that ...
- b it up, but ...
- c something earlier.
- **d** we resolve this?
- e with you about ... ? f perhaps we could ...
- g just that ...
- h in mind?
 i agree on ...?
- 2 1.11 Listen to a student doing the task below. Tick the

You are going on holiday with a friend for the first time. You are having problems with your friend. You feel you are taking all the responsibility. Talk with your friend about preparing for the trip and agree on a fair division of the tasks.

- 3 Put the following topics in the order they were discussed. What other topic was discussed?
 - a arranging insurance
 - b changing money and traveller's cheques
 - c organising transport to the airport
 - **d** booking and paying for the holiday
- 4 1.11 Read the Speaking Strategy. Listen again. Note examples of the strategies you hear.

Speaking Strategy

In a guided conversation, listen carefully to what the other person is saying and show interest.

Use structures like *Oh, dear ... Oh, I'm sorry ... I didn't realise ...* to empathise with the other person.

Use question tags, e.g. \dots don't you? \dots isn't it?... are you? to gain agreement from the other person.

- 5 Match the question tags with the statements.
- 1 You've got the money, ___?
 - 2 | paid for the ticket. ?
 - 3 Holidays aren't easy to organise, ___?
 - 4 We hadn't booked the tickets, ___?
 5 She can't be telling the truth, ___?
 - a had we?
- b didn't I?
- c can she?
- d haven't you?
 e are thev?
- 6 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use supposed to.
 - It's important that we keep our travel documents safe at all times.
 - 2 It's expected that we leave a tip after the meal.
 - 3 We need to pay for the holiday by the 25th.
- 7 Read the task below. Prepare your points about the issues below. Think of diplomatic phrases to use.

You are on holiday with a friend and are having problems with him/her. You feel you are taking all the responsibility for organising sightseeing trips, looking after the money and the luggage, and keeping the hotel room tidy. Talk with your friend about agree on how you can share these tasks.

- 1 organising sightseeing trips
- 2 looking after the money and luggage
- 3 keeping the hotel room tidy
- 8 Think of one more topic to add and prepare a diplomatic phrase to use.
- 9 Now do the task using your notes from exercises 7 and 8.

2H

Writing

Essay: for and against

I can discuss both sides of a topic.

Preparation

Writing Strategy

When you write an essay, you need to ensure that it has a clear structure.

Paragraph 1: introduction (stating the issue)

 $\textbf{Paragraph 2:} \ arguments \ for \ the \ statement$

Paragraph 3: arguments against the statement Paragraph 4: summary, your own opinion

1 Read the Writing Strategy and the task below. What ideas do you expect to see in the essay?

'A problem shared is a problem halved.' Write an essay in which you offer arguments for and against discussing your personal problems with a friend.

2 Look at the phrases below. Find five more phrases for introducing arguments in the essay.

Introducing one side of the argument	
It can be argued that	
On the one hand,	
Furthermore, / Moreover, Introducing the other side of the argument However, On the other hand, 4	
Having said that, / That said, And yet, s	
6	

- 3 Write the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first. Use the words in brackets.
 - 1 I'll do the dishes if you clean the kitchen. (provided that)
 - 2 Despite the fact that he seems nice, I still don't trust him. (even though)
 - 3 Always try everything, despite the possibility it might not work out. (even if)
 - 4 He'll fix your bike if you lend it to him on Saturday. (on condition that)
 - 5 If I study all week, I'll pass the exam. (provided that)



When people say that 'a problem shared is a problem halved,' they mean that it is good to talk about your issues with someone else. While this may be true, there can also be disadvantages to looking for help in this way.

The first advantage of talking to a friend about a personal problem is that you will gain sympathy and support from someone who cares about you. No one can deny that it is very helpful to have someone who listens to you and shows concern. Even if your friend can't offer practical advice, it will still make you feel better. It is also true that talking through a problem can help you come to a solution yourself.

So are there any disadvantages in confiding in friends in this way? Although it is true that it is helpful to share your problems with a friend, we should also remember that it is not a good idea to talk about your personal problems to everybody, or it can easily become gossip. It is important to pick one good friend that you can trust to keep your problem to themselves. Moreover, not everybody is kind, so you can end up feeling worse, unless you choose your friend wisely.

To sum up, talking about your problems to a friend is a very beneficial thing to do, provided that you pick the right person. A good friend is one you can trust.

Writing Guide

'You should always paddle your own canoe.' Write an essay in which you offer arguments for and against being totally independent, not asking for help and only relying on yourself.

Disadvant	ages				
-----------	------	--	--	--	--

5 Write your essay.

CHECK YOUR WORK

4 Read the task and make notes.

0	Have you
9	followed the structure in the Writing Strategy?
	included key phrases for presenting your ideas?
	used a linker where possible?

Review Unit 2

1 Complete the sentences with the words below.

humiliated stressed stunned

1 Beth is completely ___

alarmed bitter content disillusioned envious

doing. It's nothing like she expected it to be.

with the course she's

Vocabulary

	2 My sister's a bit about her wedding at the	
	moment. She can't sleep at night.	Despite the fact that gun possession is legal in Iceland,
	3 I felt utterly when I fell down the stairs. The	'v crimes, like murder, are almost unheard of. Around a quarter of the country's population owns a gun,
	whole class saw me and laughed!	but these are hardly ever used to ² c crimes.
	4 I'm rather of your new smartphone. I'd love	Pickpocketing and other ³ p crimes are also
	to have one like that!	rare. According to experts, the country has a tradition of
	5 We were very when my little brother	crime ⁴ p which stops any potential issues as
	disappeared. He was missing for over an hour.	soon as they are detected. In the 1970s, the government
	6 My dad feels very about losing his job. He	dealt with a minor crime ⁵ w, involving drugs,
	thinks it was really unfair.	by creating a separate drugs police force and drugs court. Today, there are relatively few hard drugs in Iceland compared
	7 We were quite to sit and wait. We weren't in	to other countries. Politicians are currently attempting to
	any hurry.	⁶ c organised crime, which is on the increase,
	8 Everybody was by the tragic news.	by passing new laws that will aid police in the fight.
	Mark: /8	Mark: /
	Complete the second sentence with an idiom containing the word in brackets.	5 Complete the dialogue with diplomatic phrases.
		A Rose, can I have a 1 with you?
	1 I'm thrilled about winning the race. (moon)	B Sure. What's up?
	I'm 2 My mum is exasperated with my older brother. (hair)	A I didn't want to 2 it up, but you still owe me
	She's	some money.
	31165	B Yes, I know. I'm really sorry about that.
	Tom isn't sure if he should go to university. (minds)	A thought 3 we could talk about when you
	He's about it.	were planning on paying me back.
	4 Our first exam is today, so we're a bit anxious. (edge)	B I'm afraid I can't give it to you right now, Lily.
	We're all	A Why's that?
	5 Waiting in queues makes me feel irritated. (nerves)	B It's 4 that my mum lost her job last month,
	It	so she's stopped giving me pocket money.
		A Oh, no! You should have 5 something earlier
	6 Mia didn't get the job, so she's miserable. (dumps)	B You 6 feel that you can't trust me any more!
	She's	A No, it's not that. I just couldn't understand why you hadn'
		paid me back. Now I know!
	Mark: /6	Mark: /
w	ord Skills	Grammar
2	Complete the control of the control	6 Complete the second sentence with a comparative or
	Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.	superlative so that it means the same as the first. Use the
	1 You're here last. I've been waiting for ages!	correct form of the adverb or adjecive from the first sentenc
	2 My cousin's staying with us now, until he finds his	1 You don't walk as fast as me.
	own place.	I walk
	3 The future of that company is doubt because it's	2 No one in my family sings as badly as my sister.
	losing money.	My sister is
	4 Let's meet at 8.00 second thoughts, we'd better	3 My best friend is more outgoing than me.
	make it 7.15 so that we have time to get the tickets.	I'm not

5 I was _____ the impression that it was going to rain today.6 Sorry I'm late. I got on the wrong bus ____ mistake.

7 _____ course she'll be upset if you don't go to her party.

4 Complete the text about crime. Write one word in each gap.

Mark:

You're her best friend!

2

Review Unit 2

4	You'll be safe if you're cautiou
	The more cautious you are,

- 5 My mum doesn't drive as carefully as my dad. My dad drives
- 6 No one I know is more critical than my brother. My brother is

Mark: /6

7 Look at the figures in the table. Then complete the sentences with the words below.

even far nearly nothing nowhere

The 100 most dangerous cities in the USA, 2015				
City	Population	Crime rate (per 1,000)		
Camden, New Jersey	76,903	25.66		
Chester, Pennsylvania	34,046	21.53		
Detroit, Michigan	688,701	21.1		
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania	1,553,165	11		

- The crime rate in Philadelphia is ______ near as high as it is in Camden.
- 2 Camden's population is ______ like as large as Philadelphia's.
- 3 Camden's population is quite small, but Chester's is _____ smaller.
- 4 Chester's population isn't _____ as big as Detroit's.
- 5 There are _____ more people living in Philadelphia than there are in Detroit.

Mark: /5

8 Complete the sentences with the infinitive, the infinitive without to or the -ing form of the verbs below.

argue ask get pack swim waste

1 I've been meaning ______ about your job interview.

2 I think my brother has fallen out with his girlfriend. I heard them last night.

- 3 _____ is not advisable when there is a storm warning.
- 4 I'd rather _____ a takeaway than cook dinner tonight.
- 5 Why _____ time in front of the TV when you could be outside in the sunshine?
- 6 | remembered _____ my tracksuit, but | didn't bring my trainers, so | can't go running.

Mark: /

Use of English

9 Choose the correct answers (a-c) to complete the text.

Jet lag is a problem experienced after a long-houl flight. It occurs when people cross a number of time zones, disrupting their natural body clock 1 a while. One of 2 common symptoms is a disturbed sleep pattern, which means that they may want to sleep during the day 3 —first. 4 —confused and disoriented is another symptom. It usually takes one or two days to get the body clock 3 —control again, although some people adjust to jet lag more 6 —than others. The symptoms are usually 7 —worse when going from west to east, because some time is lost during the journey, making the day of arrival 8 —. This causes problems for travellers, who would sooner 9 —sleep than try to force it. In general, the more time zones that are crossed, 10 —severe the jet lag can become.

1	a	during	b	for	c	in
2	a	more	b	most	c	the most
3	a	at	b	by	c	on
4	a	Feel	b	To feel	C	Feeling
5	a	over	b	in	c	under
6	a	quick	b	quicker	c	quickly
7	a	more	b	much	c	quite
8	a	shortest	b	shorter	c	shortly
9	a	delay	b	to delay	c	delaying
10	a	more	b	the more	c	the most
					1	Mark: /1

I can ...

Read the statements. Think about your progress and tick one of the boxes.

 \star = I need more practice. $\star \star \star$ = No problem!

** = I sometimes find this difficult.

	*	**	***
I can describe feelings and emotions.			
I can make comparisons.			
I can understand emphasis.			
I can use infinitives and -ing forms.			
I can use preposition + noun phrases.			
I can understand a text about crime.			
I can use diplomatic language in a discussion.			
I can discuss both sides of a topic.			

Total:

Exam Skills Trainer

Reading

Strategy

When you do a gapped sentence task, read the missing sentences A–E, and decide what the main focus of each is. This will help you match the sentences with the ideas expressed in the sentences before and after the gaps in the text.

- 1 Read the Strategy and look at the sentences in exercise 2. Find the words that indicate the focus of each sentence.
- 2 Read the text. Four sentences have been removed. Match missing sentences A–E with gaps 1–4. There is one extra sentence.

Dying for a selfie

Most of us have taken a selfie at one time or another, be it a photo of ourselves in a beautiful place, during a performance by our favourite band, or on a memorable night out with friends. Even monarchs, prime ministers and presidents have been seen in the news grinning inanely at the screen of a smartphone. In several cases, this action has had disastrous consequences. Take, for example, the Spaniard who was killed by a bull while he

lake, for example, the Spannard who was killed by a bull white he was taking a selfe during the annual bull run in a village near his hometown. Incidents such as these have led to the death toll from selfle-related incidents reaching double figures for the first time in 2015, overtaking the number of victims of shark attacks. Most of the cases involve people taking selfles while posing with animals, or falling from high places.

Despite the risks, social media is full of pictures featuring near misses that could have been fatal under other circumstances. Under the caption 'Most dangerous selfie ever', a woman posing at a stadium can be seen narrowly avoiding being hit in the head by a baseball approaching her. ' What is even more worrying, however, is that the woman herself dares others to better the shot, seemingly overlooking the fact that by doing so, she is endangering the lives of her 'friends' as well.

In response to the increasing threat posed by the selfie, the authorities have started to take action. National parks, such as the Waterton Canyon in Denver, Colorado, have closed their gates to visitors who have been getting too close to the bears to get them in the photo. * But if instructions like these are really necessary, then perhaps it is about time we asked ourselves which is more important, a 'like' or a life?

- A Or the Singaporean tourist who died when he fell from cliffs on the coast of Bali.
- **B** The alternative to taking unnecessary risks is to use Photoshop to create outrageous pictures.
- C The Russian Interior Ministry has launched a public education campaign advising selfie-takers against balancing on dangerous surfaces or posing with their pets, among other things.
- D But today, more and more people are putting their lives at risk in an attempt to get the most shocking picture to share on social media.
- E Yet the photo has received thousands of 'likes', and the comments below it suggest that this behaviour is something to be admired.

Listening

Strategy

Remember the questions in this task may ask you to define the gist of the text, identify the intention of the speaker(s), determine the context of the text, or distinguish fact from opinion.

- 3 Read the Strategy and look at exercise 4. What are the questions asking you to do: define the gist, identify intention, determine context, or distinguish fact from opinion?
- 4 1.12 You will hear three texts twice. Choose the correct option, A, B, or C.

T---4 1

- 1 Which of the following is stated in the talk as a fact and not an opinion?
 - A The police will only pay a visit if more than one complaint has been made.
 - B People should be quiet for eight hours every night.
 - C Neighbours must be warned about noisy birthday parties in advance.

Text 2

- 2 Where does the conversation take place?
 - A Outside a block of flats.
 - B In somebody's living room.
 - C Inside a lift.

Text 3

- 3 Why have the woman's neighbours complained about her hedge?
 - A It makes their houses extremely dark.
 - B It is two or three metres higher than it should be.
 - C It blocks the view from their windows.

Use of English

Strategy

When you answer each question, look at both what comes before and what comes after the gap. Check that the word you choose fits the sentence grammatically and that it makes sense.

5 Read the Strategy and look at the sentence below. Which is the correct option? Why are the other options wrong?

It's far more difficult to find a job now than it ___ to b

a have **b** used **c** wants **d** was

Exam Skills Trainer

6 Read the text and complete the gaps. Choose the correct answer, A, B, C, or D.

Keeping a country clean

One problem that all the countries in the world have 1 common is litter. In 2___ to get the situation under control in the UK, the government 3__ a national spring cleaning day, which takes place every year on the first day of spring. The aim is to convey the message that local areas will be places to work and live if people look after them. Ministers believe that chewing gum companies and fast food outlets are partly responsible for the problem and so they are hoping to persuade them 5__ on the day. Studies carried out by the organisation Keep Britain Tidy have shown that more than half the population is guilty of 6__ litter, leaving it to city councils to clean up the mess. This means 7 cash from fundamental areas, such as care of the elderly, to foot the bill. It has been calculated that more than £800 million every year is spent on cleaning city streets. The government hopes to change people's behaviour by making dropping litter 8 as unacceptable as illegal parking.

1	Α	at	В	for	C	in	D	on
2	Α	a case	В	an intention	C	a trial	D	an effort
3	Α	had	В	organised	C	organises	D	has
		organised						organised
4	Α	better	В	more	C	best	D	much
5	Α	helping	В	to help	C	help	D	helped
6	Α	drop	В	dropping	C	dropped	D	to drop
7	Α	diverting	В	to divert	C	divert	D	diverted
8	Α	even	В	far	C	just	D	much

Speaking

Strategy

To sound natural, use language which is typical for spoken interaction, e.g. phrasal verbs (get on, turn up), discourse markers (you know, actually, as I was saying, what I mean is), colloquial expressions (in hot water, couch potato), or hedging words (may, might, could, quite, a bit, sort of, I quess).

7 Read the Strategy and look at sentences 1–6. Replace the underlined words with the more colloquial alternatives below.

a drag but get in touch with kind of busy loads and loads of put up with

- 1 Sorry, I'm occupied today.
- 2 How can you tolerate this mess? __
- 3 I'll contact him tomorrow.
- 4 Good idea; however, I'm not around on Monday.
- 5 There are many exercises to do.
- 6 Studying grammar is very boring.

- 8 As part of a school exchange, a student from the UK is staying with you. You are having problems with the student and you need to establish some clear rules. Discuss the following points and come to an agreement on each one.
 - · leaving the lights on
 - · clearing up after meals
 - · talking on the phone late at night
 - · using your laptop
- 9 Summarise what you have agreed for each point in exercise 8.

Writing

Strategy

Always start by planning your arguments. Write down three or four ideas for and three or four against the topic. Choose the best two arguments for each side of the issue, and develop them by adding a comment or providing an example.

- 10 Read the Strategy and look at the arguments below against sharing a flat with a sibling. Develop the arguments. Use the questions to help you.
 - 1 It may mean no privacy for both of you. Will you be able to keep your 'private life' away from your sibling? What might they report back to your parents?
 - 2 It will lead to arguments over household chores. Why will it be difficult to share out the chores? How might this affect your relationship?
 - 3 There may be pressure to hang out constantly. Why will it be difficult to have space for yourself? What might your sibling think if you refuse to go out with him/her one evening?
- 11 Read the task below and write your essay.

Some parents have access to their teenage children's accounts on social media and control their online activities. Write an essay in which you discuss arguments for and against the attitude of these parents.

Customs and culture

Vocabulary



Express yourself

I can describe body language, gestures and movement.

1 Match the gestures below with the pictures (1-6).

cover your mouth cross your legs give a thumbs up point scratch your head shrug your shoulders











2 Which parts of the body do you use to make the following gestures and expressions? Put the words below in the correct column.

nod point pout scowl shake wave wink

head	face	hand

3 Complete the text with the correct form of the words below.

bite frown grin nod shake yawn

	s really nervous before the Spanish speaking e Igeted and played with a pen or he ¹	exam! He
	rnails. He also started 2, even th	ough
he wasn	't sleepy! When he looked at me, he 3	
nervous	ly, but there was nothing funny about the situa	ation.
Then, in	the exam, instead of answering the examiner's	s questions
with a 'y	es' or 'no' and an explanation, he just 4	or
5	his head! Luckily, the examiner 6	
at these	answers, so Mark got the message and started	d speaking

Complete the sentences with the wo	ords below.
------------------------------------	-------------

annoyance anxiety boredom disgust friendliness surprise

- 1 People will see it as a sign of ______ if you are yawning all the time.
- 2 If you bite your nails, people will think it's a sign of
- People will say you're showing ______ if you purse your lips.
- 4 People will see it as a sign of ______ if you wave.
- 5 If you grimace, people will say you're showing _
- 6 If you raise your eyebrows, people will think it's a sign of

5 1.3 Listen to four speakers. Match sentences A–E with speakers 1–4. There is one extra sentence.

This speaker:

- A gets a shock when she hears some news.
- **B** thinks some instructions cause confusion.
- C is disappointed with someone's performance.
 - D is indifferent to an activity.
- E feels shame for what has happened.

6 (1.13) Listen again and complete the sentences with the emotions below. There are two extra emotions.

fear ignorance indifference interest shock surprise

1 Speaker 1 feels at their friend's wish to go and

- see a musical.

 2 Speaker 2 expresses his _____about how he should
- use electrical devices.

 3 Speaker 3 talks about someone who uses _______to
- try and obtain things.

 4 Speaker 4 says someone has to show more ______in
- their work.

7 Match the words below with the descriptions. There are two extra words.

clear your throat cough gasp hiccup sigh slurp sneeze sniff snore tut

- 1 Some people do this in their sleep.
- 2 We often do these three things when we have a cold.
- 3 People sometimes do this before they speak. _
- 4 It is considered rude to do this in some cultures when you eat dishes such as soup.
- 5 We make this sound when we want to show disapproval of something.
- 6 We make this sound to express both sadness and pleasure.

1 a / you / guidehook / huy / needn't

and you 7_ be fine!

2 a need

3 a must

6 a may

7 a can

4 a could

1 a ought to b can

5 a should b mustn't

b might not

b needn't

b have to

b can

Modals: present and future

1 Write the words in the correct order to make sentences.

I can use modals to talk about the present, and future possibility

, ,, 8,, ,	 The winters are able to be very cold in Austria.
2 book/table/need/don't/we/to/a	2 When we visit Norway next month, we should see the
apologise / her / ought / she / to / behaviour / for	Northern Lights
4 we / take / are / to / a / supposed / gift / ?	blue curtains, just as Lara described. 4 That man mustn't be Ella's dad – he looks too old.
5 a / don't / to / tip / you / have / leave	5 This can be the last time I see you! I have to see you again!
6 eat/your/hand/have/you/to/with/right	6 You have to wait for me if you're in a hurry – I'll see you there
2 Match the sentence halves. 1 This is supposed 4 He needn't 2 It can 5 It can't 3 You'll be able to 6 Everyone ought	7 In a year's time, I'll be able to drive
 a take a boat trip tomorrow if the weather improves. b be easy travelling on your own as you may get lonely. c to be the most beautiful city in the world. d to keep an open mind about other cultures. e be extremely hot in Australia at Christmas. f check out of the hotel yet. 	1 Sometimes our neighbours are very noisy. Our neighbours very noisy. 2 You may not have another opportunity to see this film. This last opportunity to see this film. 3 I'm sure we're not late because we left on time. We left on time so late. 4 Surely you recognise that woman from TV?
3 Choose the correct verbs (a–d) to complete the text.	that woman from TV!
	5 hope it'll be possible to go skiing in the winter. hope go skiing in the winter. 6 It's possible that tomorrow's match will be cancelled. Tomorrow's match cancelled. 6 Complete the text with the words below. able might mustn't needn't should (x2) supposed
Customs in different countries 1_ vary widely and it's sometimes difficult to know how to behave. If you're visiting Turkey, for example, and you're asked to dinner at someone's house, you 2_ take a gift. It 3_ be anything expensive – flowers or pastries are a good idea. Try to eat everything on your plate or you 4_ upset your host! Remember that you 5_ point at people with your finger – it's considered very rude. And you 6_ show the bottoms of your feet for the same reason. Watch what other people do and follow their example	Every country around the world has its own customs and traditions, usually connected with bringing good luck or trying to avoid bad luck. For example, in Japan, if a beggar comes to your house, you are to throw salt where they've been, otherwise you have bad luck. In Brazil, you have bad luck. In Brazil, you have bad luck in Brazil, bring you good luck. In India, if there is a birth or death,

4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences. Tick the correct

sentences.

d should

d may

d must

d might

c don't need to d have to

d ought to

d are able to

c must

c has to

b are supposed to **c** shouldn't

c should

c should

c mustn't

the family members 5

of the table or they won't be 6_

expensive ones are better!

a life partner. And in Vietnam, you 7_

light a lamp in the house for fifteen days. Unmarried people in Russia should avoid sitting at the corner

take an expensive gift to a wedding; in fact, two less

go to a temple or

Listening

When in Rome ...

I can identify different types of listening text.



1	Write informal sentences with the same meaning. Use the words in brackets.	Such clues include register (formal or informal), subject vocabulary or the speaker's tone of voice.		
	1 Good morning. (there)	Read the Listening Strategy. Then listen to extend match them with text types a-f.		
	2 It's a pleasure to meet you. (good)	a an interview d a joke b a story e a play		
	3 Allow me to introduce you to some of my colleagues. (meet)	c a chat between friends f a review		
	4 Could I fetch you a coffee at all? (fancy)	4 1.16 Listen to the beginnings of four texts. Who is speaking? Match text types 1–6 with people A–F. The		
	5 It's very kind of you to offer. (why)	two extra people. A entertainer		
	6 It was a pleasure to meet you. (great)	B media presenter		
	1.14 Listen to extracts from conversations. For each one, decide if it is formal (F) or informal (I). Then write the	5		
	words or phrases that helped you decide.			

Listening Strategy

As you listen, focus on features that tell you what type of text you are hearing (e.g. news, interview, advertisement, notice, story, review, joke, etc.) and what the topic is. al), subject

3	1.15	Read the Listening Strategy. Then listen to extracts
	1-6 and	match them with text types a-f.

ı	an interview	d	a joke	
)	a story	e	a play	
	a chat between friends	f	a review	

speaking? Match text types 1–6 with people A–F. There are two extra people.				
A entertainer	D	student and professor		

two extra people.				
Α	entertainer	_ D	student and professor	
В	media presenter	E	colleagues	
C	friends	F	tourist guide and tourist	

oose the

- husiastic about?
 - ign language.
 - b The challenge of learning new vocabulary quickly.
 - c Opportunities to improve her French outside of her lessons.
- 2 In text 2, what is Stella's main worry about her friends?
 - a That they won't be able to find work in the USA.
 - b That Joe won't understand Maria's problems.

 - c That Maria will not be happy in the USA.
- 3 In text 3, why is the comedian planning to do shows abroad?
 - a To help people abroad improve their English.
 - b To show that London is home to the best comedians.
 - c To show that English comedians can speak other languages too.
- 4 In text 4, what is the woman doing?
 - a She's selling tickets for the London Eye.
 - b She's giving advice on London attractions.
 - c She's offering guided tours.



Grammar

Past modals
I can use modal verbs to talk about past actions.

	Choose the correct options (a-c) to complete the sentences. 1 I can't get this tablet to work; I read the instructions properly. a oughtn't to have b can't have c shouldn't have 2 I ordered the DVD a week ago so it arrived here by now. a should have b could have c may have I can't find my phone anywhere. I left it at school. a should have b may have c ought to have 4 Julie's not at home. She decided to go out after all. a was supposed to have b must have c ought to have 5 You promised to help Ed if you didn't have time. a mustn't have b couldn't have c shouldn't have	4 Complete the sentences with needn't have or didn't need to and the verb in brackets. In which sentences are both modals possible? 1 I managed to mend my sunglasses so luckily I (get) a new pair. 2 It was sunny so we (take) an umbrella. 3 We (catch) a cab as my mum gave us a lift. 4 Alison (buy) a ticket – I had a spare one. 5 I (worry) about the test – when
	6 You told me you'd eaten all the biscuits! I'd have got some more.	I saw the paper I realised I knew all the answers. 6 You(walk) the dog; we walked it
	a may have b must have c might have	this morning.
	Complete the sentences with up to five words, including the words in brackets.	5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. could didn't need to needn't ought not to
	1 Someone (might / told / me) there was	was supposed to 1 You have reminded me to do the
	a hole in my jumper!	1 You have reminded me to do the homework – I did it last night.
	2 Sandra (supposed / be / here) by now. I wonder where she is.	2 Tanya be here half an hour ago.
	3 You (ought / have / gone) swimming if	Where is she?
	you have a cold.	3 We have told Jenny about Luca's
	4 Wendy didn't look very happy when I saw her; she	party. He didn't want her to know about it.
	(could / worried / about) going to	4 Someone have warned me that
	the dentist.	the band's new album was so awful!
	5 The fridge is empty; Mum (can't /	5 They knew the way so they ask
	been / the) shops yet.	for directions.
	6 Last night (must / been / cold) – the lake's frozen.	6 Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets.
3	Complete the email with the correct form of the verbs below.	1 Lunch was provided so it wasn't necessary for them to take sandwiches. (need)
_	can't could (x2) may must should	take sandwiches. (need)
	can't could (x2) may must should	2 She studied hard so she probably passed the exam.
\times	To: artur@email.com	(should)
	Artur	2. Interior to the Company of the Co
Well, we're still enjoying our trip to England. We're staying in a great city – but someone 1 told us that there was going to be a festival here yesterday! Perhaps we 2 realised something		3 I think he's foreign so it's possible he didn't understand you. (might)
was happening, because a lot of the hotels were full. The festival was		4 John isn't in Rome – I saw him earlier. (can't)
great! According to the local paper, this 3 been the		
biggest crowd they'd ever had. The streets were packed. I reckon there 4		5 It would have been better if you'd listened to my advice. (ought)
	nd you, some of the people 6 been very comfortable as	
you	ne of the costumes looked really hot! I bought you a souvenir. I'll see ı in a couple of weeks.	6 Why didn't you introduce me to your friends? (might)
Ler	na	
MITTER.	THE STREET OF THE STREET, STRE	

Word Skills

American English
I can recognise differences between American and British English.

Write the American English equivalents of the words in Why don't you borrow my mobile to call your mum? I'll have to buy a new pair of trainers soon; these are almost worn out. Don't forget to take a torch when we go camping; it'l dark at night. Taking the motorway will make our journey quicker. Would you like a biscuit with your tea? I'll everyone's finished, I'll ask the waiter for the bill.	Write A (American) or B (British). 1 advertisement 2 brochure 3 garage 4 tomato 5 vitamins 6 yoghurt 7 zebra VOCAB BOOST!
7 Her dog's very well trained and always walks on the pavement. 8 I'm too tired to walk up the stairs; let's take the lift. 2 Complete the text with American English words. The fletters are given.	
This year, my parents decided not to go away in the summer, but to wait until the 'F to go on	5 Read the Vocab boost! box. Label the columns American and British. Then complete the equivalent spellings. Add examples from exercise 3 and more of your own.
² v for a few days. They'd always wanted to	
have a city break, so they looked online for somewhere to stay and found accommodation near the center of	behaviour 3
Manhattan. The 3a they rented was quite	beriaviour
small, but the bedrooms were big and there was plenty	Cancelation
of space in the ⁴ c for their clothes. There w also a small ⁵ y where they could eat break	fact
outside. Of course the ⁶ t in New York is gre	at Inter
for getting around; they could walk to most of the sight	
take the ⁷ s for longer journeys across towr	. 8 marvelous
	9 savory
* - *	
3 Circle the American English spellings.	6 Rewrite the American English sentences in British English
 In some US states, you only need to be fourteen to he driver's licence / license. In the neighbourhood / neighborhood of Beverly Hills many homes are worth over \$10 million. The world's first commercial flight took place in 1914; 	using the correct vocabulary and spelling. Use a dictionary to help you. 1 It's an offense to smoke on the subway.
airplane / aeroplane flew for 23 minutes. 4 New York's oldest theater / theatre is the Lyceum, which	2 I bought this awesome purse for my friend's birthday.
opened in 1903. 5 The colors / colours of the US flag are the same as	3 It seems tonight's movie has been canceled.
Australia's and the UK's.	4 Can you get me a liter of water from the faucet, please?
6 The international Erasmus organization / organisatio has already helped over three million students study i different countries.	

6 Sorry, I hadn't realized you were waiting in the line.

Reading

The Kite Runner

I can understand a review of an American novel.

Revision: Student's Book page 36

1 Match 1-5 with a-e to make compound adjectives.

- 1 home
- a set
- 2 long
- b throated
- 3 thin-
- c haired
- 4 deep-5 low-
- d boned e made
- 2 Read the review. Which three writing skills (a-e) does the reviewer say Hosseini has?
 - a He writes good dialogues between the characters.
 - b He provides good descriptions.
 - c He uses a wide range of vocabulary.
 - d He is able to explain a difficult topic to readers.
 - e The story moves along at a good speed.

Reading Strategy

- · When you do a gapped sentences task, first read the text quickly to find out what it is about.
- . Then read the text more carefully and think about what information is missing in each gap.
- · Look at the parts of the text before and after each gap to find words or information that link it to one of the missing sentences.
- · Pay attention to vocabulary and grammar structures, which may also provide ideas.
- · After you have matched a sentence to each gap, check that the remaining sentence doesn't match any of the gaps.
- 3 Read the Reading Strategy. Then read the text again, Match sentences A-E with gaps 1-4. There is one extra sentence.
 - A The Kite Runner then becomes a story of Amir's journey in search of a way to make up for what he did
 - B The fighting seems to go on forever, but there is a feeling at the end that good will defeat evil
 - C We follow the development of the boys' close relationship, but it is shattered by completely
 - D The story not only provides Western readers with an insight into a culture and a country, but it is also a lesson in how to write a bestseller.
 - E As well as portraying the close relationship between two boys, Amir and Hassan, it describes the last peaceful days of Afghanistan, before revolution and war would destroy the country.

III BOOK REVIEW

The Kite Runner by Khaled Hosseini



aled Hosseini's first novel, The Kite Runner, is a powerful story of friendship, betraval and suffering. It is set in Kabul, the capital of Afghanistan, in the seventies, then a relatively liberal and open-minded city. 1

Although the novel describes dramatic political events, it is Amir's close friendship with Hassan, the son of his father's servant, which catches our attention. Hassan serves his friend breakfast every morning and then stays to clean the house while Amir is driven to school. Hassan does not resent his friend's much more comfortable life and he is a loval companion. However, Amir betrays him, an act that will make Amir feel guilty even when he and his father have escaped to America and left Hassan and the war behind. 2 It is a journey that takes him back to his home country and forces him to face the suffering that the people he left behind have to live with.

Hosseini describes Afghanistan in a way that brings the country to life, and his writing style is always clear and easy to follow. The story moves along at a fast pace and takes us on an incredibly exciting journey from the joy and happiness of the boys' youth to the anxiety and fear of the war, 3 Hosseini has demonstrated great skill in managing to take such a complicated theme and produce a novel that readers all over the world find hard to put down.

The Kite Runner is a dramatic novel that is full of action and emotion and that, despite the war that erupts and destroys people's lives, offers hope. 4__ Much of the story is set in a country that has suffered greatly, but the ending suggests that there might be a better future both for the characters and for Afghanistan. One can only hope that this is the case.



3G

Speaking

Topic-based presentation

I can talk about a cultural event or festival.

1 Q1.19 Listen to a student doing the task below. Which of the four prompts (A-D) does she not mention?

Look at the pictures. Then talk for about one minute about how people in your country celebrate International Women's Day.

- A What is the history behind the celebration?
- B Do people usually give or receive gifts and/or cards?
- C Are there any other annual traditions?
- D Do you personally take part in any celebrations?



Speaking Strategy 1

Make sure that you mention all of the prompts in the task. Learn some useful phrases for changing the subject or moving on to the next point.

2 Read Speaking Strategy 1. Complete phrases 1–4 with the words below.

far now something subject

1 As ______ as the history of the event is concerned, ...
2 Turning ______ to the topic of ...

- 3 That brings me to the _____ of ...
- 4 There's ______else I'd like to talk about: ...
- 3 Q 1.19 Listen again. Match phrases 1–4 from exercise 2 with endings a–f below. There are two extra endings.
 - marches on International Women's Day.
 - **b** ___ home-made greetings cards.
 - c __ national holidays.
 - d ___ gifts, the most common one is flowers.
 - e ___ I'm not really an expert.
 - f celebrations at school.

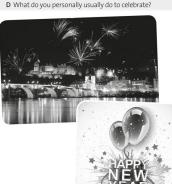
Speaking Strategy 2

When you don't know or can't remember the words you need, use phrases for paraphrasing so that you can explain what you mean in other words.

- 4 Read Speaking Strategy 2. Match the sentence halves.
 - 1 It would be called x a you (wear / eat / drink, etc.).
 - 2 It's like x, b kind of ...
 - 3 It's something c in my language.
 4 It's a d but (bigger / smaller, etc.).
- 5 Choose two things you can see in the photos on this page. Describe them using phrases from exercise 4.

Look at the pictures. Then talk for about one minute about how people in your country celebrate New Year.

- A Does food or drink play a part in the celebration?
- B Do people usually give or receive gifts and/or cards?
- C Are there any other traditions?



- 6 Look at the task above. Make notes for each of the four prompts.
 - 1 Does food or drink play a part in the celebration?
 - 2 Do people usually give or receive gifts and/or cards?
 - 3 Are there any other traditions?
 - 4 What do you personally usually do to celebrate?
- 7 Now do the task, using your notes from exercise 6.

A blog post I can write a bloa post.



A newspaper has published an online article suggesting that the local bus service into town is no longer required. Write a blog post outlining the advantages of the bus service, giving an account of when you last used it.

Preparation

- 1 Read the task above and the article below.
 - In which paragraph does the writer ...
 - 1 describe a personal experience?
 - 2 list reasons to keep the bus service?
 - 3 give a reason for writing the letter? ___
 - 4 suggest that money isn't the only consideration?



DON'T BAN THE BUSES!

- A Without buses, local residents will be, quite simply, stranded. Your article suggested that the service into town costs the council too much money and is not used enough. As a young person who relies on the bus, I'd like to outline some arguments against this view.
- B I strongly disagree with the suggestion that there is no value in continuing the bus service. Firstly, not everyone has a car, so won't a public service always be required? Secondly, the bus gives teenagers necessary independence and the ability to travel. Thirdly, the bus is much more environmentally friendly than cars. Therefore the cost must be weighed against the cost to the environment if there were no bus service.
- The last time I took the bus was last weekend. I always go by bus into the town centre with my friends on Saturdays. Travelling to town, I chatted to the other passengers. They were all in agreement that the service was still necessary and that they would have great difficulty in managing without it. In fact, the point was made that if there were more buses, the service would be used even more.
- In my view, rather than being unnecessary, the bus service is essential for those in the community without a car. They are also invaluable for bringing and keeping communities together. How can you put a price on that?

Writing Strategy

Make a plan for your blog post so you allow enough space to include every element from the task instructions.

Remember to include a good introduction and a summary.

- 2 Read the Writing Strategy and find the two paragraphs in the blog post that cover the elements required in the task.
- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.
 - 1 Having (run) to catch the bus, I got to the party in time.
 - (travel) together on the train, we often chatted.
 - 3 As the tourists (arrive), the tourist office opened.
 - 4 After (finish) his coffee, he went to the cinema. (wait) for you, I read a book.
- 6 Having_ ___ (make) the cake, they began to eat it.
- 7 After__ (swim) in the river, they sunbathed for an hour.
- 4 Find an example of one of the structures from exercise 3 in the blog post.

Writing Guide

Advantages

¢

A local newspaper published an online article suggesting that the tourist office in town is an unnecessary expense. Write a blog post outlining the advantages of the tourist office and giving an account of a time you used it with a foreign visitor.

5 Read the task above. Make some notes for a) the advantages of the tourist office and b) your account.

Auvantages			
Your account			
-			

0	write your blog post. Follow the paragraph plan in exercise
	CHECK YOUR WORK
0	Have you

structured your blog post in four paragraphs? written equally about both required elements? included a sequencing clause in your description?

2

Review Unit 3

Vocabulary

ocabulary	4 Complete the sentences with compound adjectives formed
Complete the sentences with a verb from A and a body part from B. A bowed covered crossed folded gave pursed raised shrugged B arms eyebrows fingers head lips mouth shoulders thumbs 1 Mike's parents him a up to encourage him to do his best in the race. 2 My brother his across his chest defensively when my parents asked where he'd been. 3 The teacher her in disbelief at Aaron's excuse for not doing the homework. 4 On the day of her driving test, Olivia her for luck as she was getting into the car. 5 My grandmother her in disapproval when my brother showed her his new tattoo. 6 The boy his in shame when he was expelled from school. 7 The girl her as she yawned during the ceremony. 8 I didn't know the answer so I just my Mark: /8 Match 1–6 with a–f. 1 I can't sleep. a You're sniffing. 1 Eat your soup properly. 2 Blow your nose! b You're coughing. 4 Ah, you don't approve. d You're slurping.	using the words in brackets. 1 Hove listening to my uncle. He's got a very rich voice and a laugh. (throat) 2 My neighbour's high forehead and eyes mean he has a rather memorable face. (set) 3 Your grandmother is absolutely tiny! She must be very (bone) 4 There must be a rock concert tonight. There are hundreds of men queuing outside the venue. (hair) Mark: /4 5 Complete the dialogues with the phrases below. In other words It's a kind of It's something you what it's called Dani We're having a birthday party for my little brother tomorrow. John That's nice. Is he going to have a – oh – I don't know in English. Dani Cake? John No. 2 box with sweets in it. Dani A present? John No! 3 hang up high and the children hit it to get the sweets. 4 , when they
5 Have a drink of water. 6 Are you allergic to that? e You're snoring. f You're sneezing. Mark: /6	6 Complete the text with the words below. you don't have you must you mustn't you needn't you're supposed you should
Replaced the underlined American English words with British English words. 1 Could we have the check, please? 2 Oh no! I can't find my cellphone. 3 An apple is better for you than a bag of chips. 4 Would you like a cookie? 5 Shall we go by bus or take the subway? 6 Have you got a flashlight? There's no electricity.	If you're planning on visiting Australia in the future, here are a few tips. 1 have a visa to enter the country, unless you're an Australian or New Zealand citizen. 2 to register with the police while you're there, but 3 to leave before your visa expires. 4 take fresh or packaged food into the country, and plants and seeds are also banned. The greatest risk to personal safety comes from the sun, which, in Australia, is very strong. 5 spend all of your visit indoors, but 6 stay when it's at its strongest.
7 There's been an accident on the highway. 8 Did you get any gas before we left?	Mark: /6

Mark: /8

Review Unit 3

It's quite an informal dinner. You ___

7	Choose the correct words to complete the dialogue.	4 The use of mobile phones is prohibited in this hospital.
	A Spring at last! It 'can / may / must be your birthday soon.	Youyour mobile phone in this
	B It is - on 5 April. I'm having a barbecue that weekend.	hospital.
	A You 2can't / may / should be serious!	5 It's impossible for me to help you move house next
	B Why? What's the problem?	weekend. I'm sorry.
	A It 3can't / might / must rain!	I'm afraid I won't move house next
	B Do you think so?	weekend.
	A Yes. April 4can / should / must be very showery, you know.	6 It's possible he didn't see you, so he didn't say hello.
	B Perhaps. It scan't / must / should be all right, though. It	He didn't say hello because heyou.
	didn't rain last year.	7 It was a really bad idea to wear jeans to the wedding.
	A But you won't 6be able to / can / could eat in the garden if	I jeans to the wedding.
	the weather's bad!	8 I'm sure my sister didn't make this cake. She can't cook!
	B No problem. We'll eat in the house instead!	My sister this cake. She can't cook!
	Mark: /6	9 Why didn't you tell me you were vegetarian? I've made a beef lasagne.
8	Complete the sentences with must have, might (not) have,	You me you were vegetarian! I've
	can't have, should have, or shouldn't have and the verbs in	made a beef lasagne.
	brackets.	10 It wasn't necessary for us to bring any towels, but we did
	1 I'm not sure where Jess is, but she home.	because we didn't know.
	She wasn't feeling well earlier on. (go)	We any towels.
	2 You Dave at the football match. He's	Mark: /1
	away on holiday. (see)	Total: /6
	Oh, no! Tanya knows about the surprise party. Someone her. (tell)	
	4 I've missed my train. I a taxi to the	I can
	station instead of walking. (get)	Read the statements. Think about your progress and tick one
	5 It's been really hard to concentrate today.	of the boxes.
	I (stay) up late last night.	\star = I need more practice. $\star \star \star$ = No problem!
	6 She should definitely be here by now. Her plane	★★ = I sometimes find this difficult.
	7 I'm not sure why they didn't come. The postal service isn't	* ** **
	very reliable so they the invitation. (not	I can describe body language, gestures
	receive)	and movement.
	8 There's no money in my bank account. I	I can use modals to talk about present
	so much on clothes last weekend. (spend)	and future possibility.
	Mark: /8	I can identify different types of listening text.
U	se of English	I can use modal verbs to talk about past actions.
9	Complete the second sentence so that it means the same	I can recognise differences between
	as the first. Write up to five words in each gap. Sometimes	American and British English.
	more than one answer may be possible.	I can understand a review of an
	1 advise you to apologise before it's too late.	American novel.
	Youbefore it's too late.	I can talk about a cultural event or
	2 I'm sure my purse is at home. It isn't in my bag.	festival.
	My purse isn't in my bag. It at home.	I can write a blog post.

4

Holidays and tourism

Vocabulary



Getting away from it all I can describe types of holidays.

1 Put the words below in the correct column.

adventure holiday backpacking beach holiday beach house caravan cruise guest house holiday home self-catering apartment surfing tent time-share apartment volunteering winter sports holiday

Holiday accommodation	Types of holidays
-----------------------	-------------------

2 Match the holiday accommodation below with the sentences.

B&B hotel house swap self-catering apartment villa youth hostel

- 1 'The website said it had four stars, but the room was really small and there wasn't any Wi-Fi. If you wanted to use the internet, you had to go and use some computers in the lobby!'
- 2 'We were really lucky because their flat was right in the centre of Rome. It also had a lovely balcony with views of the square. I think they were happy with ours because it's only fifteen minutes from Trafalgar Square on the underground'
- 3 'Although it was on the coast, it also had a lovely swimming pool and a big terrace where we sat in the evenings. There were four bedrooms and enough room for all the family.'
- 4 'It was cheap, but we had to share a room with six other people who we didn't know. One guy spent the whole night talking in his sleep and kept me awake!
- 5 'The room was fine and the breakfast was enormous. We didn't need to have lunch!'
- 6 'It seemed like a good idea at first because we could eat when we wanted, but we spent a lot of time shopping in supermarkets for food.'
- 3 120 Listen to Alex and Jessica choosing a holiday. Underline the four types of holiday they mention. Which holiday do they choose to go on?

city break cycling holiday houseboat holiday house swap package holiday volunteering holiday

4 1.20 Listen again and complete the sentences with the adjectives below.

commercialised crowded dull inaccessible run-down unspoiled

- 1 Jessica doesn't think anyone will want to come to their hometown because it is
- 2 Jessica doesn't like Alex's second suggestion because the holiday destination will be ______ with tourists and very _____.

- 3 Alex doesn't like Jessica's suggestion because he thinks the accommodation will be ______ and the place
- 4 They finally decide to visit the west of Ireland, which is

$5 \ \ \mbox{Replace the underlined words with the adjectives below}.$

breathtaking dingy hospitable remote unique vibrant

- The view from the top of the mountain is <u>extremely</u> beautiful.
- 2 Our hotel room was dark and dirty.
- 3 The village is quite <u>far away</u>, but it's worth going there as it's so beautiful and unspoiled.
- 4 The people are really friendly and helpful.
- 5 New York is an incredibly energetic and exciting city.
- 6 This coastal town has a <u>special</u>, <u>unusual</u> atmosphere that will be different from anything you've experienced.

6 Complete the email with the words below.

To: kate@email.com

adventure batteries easy experiences pamper physically

Hi Kate	
'm on holiday! I decided to take it 1	and
myself at a luxury hot	tel. However, after two days,
'm bored! I wish I had decided to be 3_	active and find
somewhere! This	
notel is great and I've recharged my	
, but now I wish I	
could have new 6!	(0)
f only there were more things to do!	
Best wishes,	77.5
Harry	[[] [] [] [] []
201	

7 Match 1–8 with a–h.

- 1 They say that travel 2 You need plenty of
- You need plenty of time to
- 3 We wanted to try
- 4 I like to hang
- 5 When you travel alone, you meet
- 6 We enjoyed
- 7 We like to eat
- 8 I really need to get

- a out with my friends at the weekends.
- b the local food, but we could only find fast-food restaurants!
- c away from it all and relax.
- d broadens your horizons.
- e people from interesting places.f out in good restaurants.
- g see the sights in New York.h the nightlife, but the beaches
 - weren't very nice.



Future continuous, future perfect and future perfect continuous

I can use the future continuous and future perfect forms.

1	Choose the correct words	to complete the sentences.

- 1 By the time I go on holiday, I'll have saved / be saving plenty of spending money.
- 2 Could you call me back in half an hour? I expect I'll be finishing / have finished lunch by then.
- 3 Tomorrow, we'll be studying / have studied Australia.
- 4 I won't be playing / have played in the football match this Saturday as I'll be on my way to Spain.
- 5 What will you be doing / have done at 7 p.m. tomorrow?
- 6 We still won't have finished / be finishing our exams by next Monday.

2	Correct the mistakes in the sentences.	Tick the	correct
	sentences.		

- 1 Will you have cleaned your room by lunchtime?
- 2 By the end of May, I'll be living here for ten years.
- 3 It's hoped that scientists will have discovered a cure for cancer soon.
- 4 How long will you be studying English for by the end of this
- 5 They will have released the album by the end of May.
- 6 I will be growing my hair for two years soon.
- 3 Complete the text with the future continuous, future perfect, or future perfect continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

It started life above a world's most visited t		pAdvisor,	(
the end of this month	n. This year, millio	ns of us	
2	_ (read) the onlin	e reviews and	using
them to help us plan	our holidays. The	e most reviewe	d city is
London - very soon,	reviewers 3		(post)
over two million review	ews and 4		(give) the
city's attractions a rat	ting out of five 'bu	ubbles'. Astonis	shingly,
the website 5	(re	ceive) reviews	for so
long that very soon, t	the total number	of words publi	shed
6	(approach) 12,	000 times the r	number of
words in the complet			

Write the words in the correct order to form p	olite questions
--	-----------------

- 1 going / what / will / be / you / home / time /?
- 2 he / party / the / inviting / who / be / will / to /?
- 3 coming / when / of / be / out / will / hospital / she /?
- 4 be / will / leaving / teacher / year / why / next / our /?
- 5 seeing / you / tomorrow / be / will / Marco /?
- 6 match / will / the / be / in / you / who / supporting /?



on your next holiday? Wherever it is, you're unlikely to stay in accommodation as old as the Hoshi Ryokan hotel and spa in Japan. Next month, it 2 guests for over 1,300 years. The same family 3__ it for 46 generations, so the hotel 4 as one of the world's oldest continuously operating businesses: visitors have been enjoying the traditional gardens and magnificent scenery for centuries. If you're tempted to stay, guests this year 5 around US\$190 per night, so 6 for some time before you can afford to go!

5 Choose the correct options (a-c) to complete the text above.

- 1 a will you have stayed b will you be staying
 - c will you have been staying
- 2 a will have been welcoming b will be welcoming
 - c will have welcomed
- 3 a will be owning
- b will have owned
- c will have been owning
- 4 a will have run
- b will be running
- c will have been running
- b will have been paying
- 5 a will be paying c will have paid
- 6 a you'll probably have been saving
 - b you'll probably have saved c you'll probably be saving

6 Complete the mini-dialogues with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 A Does Frank know about the party? Can I mention it to him?
 - B Wait until this afternoon. I'll ______ (speak) to him by then.
- 2 A Have you heard from Mia recently?
 - B No. but I (meet) her tomorrow.
- 3 A Where shall we stop?
 - B At the next town. We ___ __ (travel) for three hours by then.
- 4 A Are you going dancing tonight?
- B Probably not. My grandparents.
- 5 A Are you ready for Thursday's test?
 - (revise) for a week by then! B I hope so. I___

4C

9 travel

10 sleep

Listening

Trip of a lifetime

I can identify the context of a conversation.

Revision: Student's Book page 45 Match 1-10 with a-j to make travel collocations. 1 get a a local dish b off the beaten track 2 go 3 taste c the tent 4 put up d a campfire 5 light e away from it all 6 do f with your bags 7 have g a lovely view 8 help h some volunteer work

2 Complete the text with travel collocations from exercise 1.

i rough

j light

IF YOU ARE A TRAVELLER, NOT A TOURIST — IF YOU LIKE TO RATHER THAN FOLLOW THE CROWDS —

THEN COME TO ICELAND FOR A WHOLE NEW EXPERIENCE!

Iceland is wild and exciting and you can really forget about home and just ^a _____ in this breathtaking environment. Stay in some of our lovely little hotels and you can ³ _____ of ice-capped mountains from your window. Then join us to go whale watching, or fishing in frozen lakes. You can ⁴ ____ on the lakeshore to cook your freshly caught fish and take a sleeping bag to sleep under the stars! Or you can ⁵ ____ in one of the many wonderful restaurants, if you prefer. Afterwards, you can relax outside in a volcanic hot tub!



Listening Strategy

Listen carefully for who the speakers are and where they might be. This will help you to identify the context of the conversation, and also to find out what the speakers' purpose is.

_	
3	
	conversations and make notes on the topics below.
	a Where is each person?
	1 3
	2 4
	b What kind of relationship is it? 1 3
	2 4
	c What is the approximate time of day of the conversation
	1 3
	2 4
	d What is the outcome of the conversation?
	1 3
	2 4
4	Add <i>just</i> in the correct place in the sentences.
	1 I have a short time.
	2 Could you close the door?
	3 I got to the train in time.
	4 It's amazing!
	5 He has left
	6 We have to buy milk now.
	7 This film's so funny!
	8 Could you repeat your name?
5	Match the purpose of using just (a-d) with sentences 1-8
	exercise 4.
	a for emphasis
	b to mean <i>only</i>
	c for politeness
	d to mean close to the time
6	1.22 Listen to the conversation. Are the sentences true
	(T) or false (F)?
	The conversation is happening in a restaurant.
	2 John reacts to both of Ella's suggestions with
	decisiveness.
	3 Ella would prefer to spend the day sightseeing. 4 John is worried the bus might be too hot.
	5 Ella's attitude is that you should make the most of a trip
	- Lina a actitude is that you should make the most of a trip

Future time clauses

I can use future time clauses.

1 Choose the correct options (a-c) to complete the text.

If you're thinking of volunteering abroad, why not join us on one of our conservation trips to Costa Rica this year? We take care of all your travel arrangements, so as soon as 1 , one of our group leaders will meet you at the airport. Then, once 2___ time to relax, and after 3 ___ everyone else in the group, we take you on the four-hour bus journey to the coast. You'll be working in the Tortuguero National Park on one of our conservation projects – but when 4___, there's plenty of time to enjoy the beautiful beaches, and while 5__ here you could even learn a new language. We're sure that by the time 6___ you'll have had an amazing experience!



b you arrive

b you're having

b you've met

1 a you're arriving

3 a you'll have met

2 a you've had

Tomorrow, 15

your train 6

until then. Sam

we 7

4 a vou don't work b vou aren't working c vou haven't worked 5 a you're staying b you'll be staying c you'll have stayed b you'll be leaving 6 a you'll have left c you leave 2 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Hi Otto I can't wait to see you - I can't believe that by the time [1] (see) you 12 (be) France for a month! As soon as you (arrive), we'll plan where to go, but can you bring a sleeping bag in case we 4 _ (decide) to go camping?

we'll have to wait until Saturday to meet, but I should be there the minute

(visit) my cousins in Paris, so it's a shame

(get) in. Just think: this time on Saturday,

(talk) to each other face to face! Lots of love

- 3 Choose the best verb form to complete the first conditional sentences.
 - 1 If they go to Amsterdam, they will have / they are having a great time.
 - 2 If you're buying a new outfit for the party, I get / I'm getting one too.
 - 3 If you get out of school before me, wait / you'll wait for me at the bus stop.
 - 4 If we don't hurry up, we won't be finishing / won't have finished this exercise by the end of the lesson.
 - 5 If he gets good grades, my brother goes / will go to university.
 - 6 If this DVD's any good, I'll lend / have lent it to you.
- 4 Choose the answer that makes most sense. Sometimes both answers are possible.
 - 1 I'll let you know as soon as / in case I've booked my ticket.
 - 2 If it stays hot, the clothes will have dried the minute / by the time we leave.
 - 3 My parents will let me go camping on condition that / once I phone every day.
 - 4 By the time / When she lands in New York. she'll have been travelling for two days.
 - 5 If / Unless you need anything, just ask at reception.
 - 6 Take a book in case / on condition that you get bored on the flight.
- 5 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.
 - 1 I won't take suncream unless you do. If you don't_ either.
 - 2 It may rain later, so take an umbrella. Take an umbrella in
 - 3 I'll finish packing and then I'll call a cab. call a cab. 4 You won't hear from me again until I'm in
 - London. Bv me again, I'll
 - be in London.
 - 5 He can't go unless he finds his passport soon. soon, he won't be able to go.
 - 6 We can't share a room if you snore! We can share a room on condition

c you'll be arriving

c you'll be having

c you'll be meeting

Word Skills

Adverbs and adverbial phrases I can use adverbs and adverbial phrases.

Complete the sentences with the words below.	4 Read the Vocab boost! box and complete the pairs of
early friendly monthly motherly weekly yearly	sentences with the correct form of the adverbs below.
1 We love going camping and try to go	close flat free hard late near
usually in September.	1 a They're identical twins; you cantell them
2 Lessons will finish today for the parents'	apart.
meeting.	b It started to rain just as we left the house.
3 'Do you go shopping every week?' 'No, we just do one big	2 a This DVD came with my magazine.
shop'	b You can speak here – we're all good friends.
4 He gestured in a way and invited us over.	3 a I love cricket so I've been following the match
5 She hugged the crying child in a way.	
6 I see Nina when we play tennis on	b We couldn't get enough to ask for his
Saturdays.	autograph.
2 Write the words in the correct order to make sentences.	4 a All the students denied cheating.
	b She has a strong voice but a rathertone.
1 my/monthly/renew/membership/I/gym	5 a I forgot to pack my swimming costume!
	b It's November and Christmas is getting
2 a / way / smiled / lovely / she / in / really	6 a Don't go to bedtonight; remember that
	we've got an early start tomorrow.
3 band / town / my / in / plays / brother's / fortnightly	b Katya hasn't been well so she won't be at school.
4 a / the / spoke / way / in / man / cowardly	- SCHOOL
,, ., .,,,,,	5 Complete the text with the words below.
5 crashed / driving / when / she / fast / was / too / she	closely hardly lately lively
5,,,,,,,,	nearly rough widely
6 diving / can / to / he / annually / go / afford / ?	
	In Down and Out in Paris and London
	(1933), author George Orwell writes
Choose the correct adverb (a or b) to complete the	about the poverty in the two cities,
sentences.	describing in a 1 way his
1 The dentist asked her to open her mouth	experience of mixing with the very poor. After living in Paris for 2 two years, Orwell fell seriously ill and had
a wide b widely	all his money stolen. He then returned to London, sleeping
2 Despite watching, I don't know how the magician did	
that!	3 and living 4 with tramps. His book was 5 praised at the time for its honest
a closely b close	study, but it seems that some things have 6
3 haven't seen you – is everything ok?	changed more than eighty years on. Parts of the cities
a late b lately	have become very rich 7, but the problems
4 The next train goes to London without stopping.	of unemployment and homelessness still exist.
a direct b directly	
5 Shall we sit to the door so we can leave quietly?	6 Choose the correct words (a-d) to complete the sentences.
a close b closely	
6 We'll be there in half an hour.	1 It's so dark that I can see anything.
a roughly b rough	a hard b hardly c harder d hardest
	2 The doctor gave me tablets that I must take
VOCAB BOOST!	a by day b daily c a day d the day
When you come across adverbs which have two forms,	3 Everyone wasupset to hear the news.
e.g. deep / deeply, write down example sentences to show	a deep b deeply c in a deep way d deep in
the different meanings and to help you remember them.	4 We shouldn't leave home tomorrow if we want to catch
Don't swim too far out; the water's really deep.	the train.
I'm deeply sorry for upsetting you.	a late b lately c later d latest
	5 Do you liveyour grandparents?
	a near b nearby c nearly d by near

a flat

Reading

Globetrotters

I can understand a text about adventure holidays.

1 Complete the email with the correct form of th verbs below.					
come get (x2) go pull set stop take					
⊠ т	o: frank@email.c	om			
Hi Frank					
a break. Andy 3_view of the around of this way beautifu. Andy way but I wa		ved at Petra off to climb quite a few p I didn't fance across uvenirs and re of the me	and it was the hills to eople 4 / exploring some loca bought a fe ever in a loca bournents to ack to the	s amazing! get a better the place in al people selling w. cal hotel to the next day, capital so we	

Read the texts. Are the sentences true (T) or false (
	:12

- 1 In the past, adventure holidays were something that only the well-off could afford to do.
- 2 The crocodiles at Crocosaurus swim inside a glass cage that is lowered into the water.
- 3 The spa in Israel is overcrowded.
- 4 The visitors lie on their backs on the massage table.
- 5 You have to walk along the 'Changong Zhando' in order to get to the top of Mount Haushan.
- 6 The 'Changong Zhando' is through two mountains.

Reading Strategy

When you have to match statements or questions with different texts, you must remember that some of the topics or key words from the task may appear in several of the texts. Study each text carefully to decide which of the statements or questions matches it most closely.

3 Read the Reading Strategy. Match texts A-C with questions 1-6 below. Each text may be matched with more than one question.

Which text mentions

VIIICII LEXT IIICII LIOIIS	
a route that visitors have to take?	Г

- 1 a route that visitors have to take?
 2 unexpected sensations?
- 3 the age of the facilities?
- 4 the chance to reduce stress?
- 5 protective equilibrium 6 losing weight?

tive equipment?	Ē
weight?	

Living dangerously!

These days, having adventure holidays is no longer for the privileged few. If you're looking for new experiences, we've got some incredible suggestions for you!

A Crocosaurus Cove, Australia

If you think adventure is synonymous with wild animals, then you should by the Cage of Death at Crocosaurus Cove in Darwin, Australia, where you can swim with crocodiles for fifteen minutes! Visitors climb into a cage made of glass walls that are four certimetres thick and are then lowered into a pool where an enormous 'croc' (six metres long and weighing eight hundred kilos) is waiting! It's an unforgettable experience and you'll be telling your friends about it for years to come.



B Talmei Elazar, Israel

A relaxing massage at a spa is the perfect way to chill out and escape the overcrowded tourist zones. However, this spa in northern Israel employs unusual staff members to give the massages; snakes! The owner, Ada Barack, asks clients to lie on the massage table and then drops six snakes onto their backs! Visitors say they expect the snakes to feel wet, but in fact they are cool, dry and smooth. You may feel a little tense at the beginning, but you'll be leaving the spa feeling more relaxed than you

(C) Mount Haushan, China

Seeing the sights at the top of Mount Haushan in China is not for people who don't like heights! After climbing the hundreds of steep steps that are cut into the rock, visitors have to walk along the 'Changong Dhando'. This is the name given to the terrifying walk along two narrow pieces of wood on the side of the mountain which are only forty centimetres wide. There is just a seven-hundred-year-old chain handrall fixed into the rock to stop you from falling over two thousand metres to your death! You'll have lost a few kilos through exercise and worry by the time you reach the top!



Unit 4 Holidays and tourism 45

4G

Speaking

Interview and stimulus-based discussion

I can discuss a topic and select and justify my choice from a range of options.

1 When you plan travelling for leisure, what is the most important consideration for you before you make your choice? Why? Tell your partner. Use the ideas below to help you.

cost interest location safety time your own idea

2 Read the task below. Decide which advert is more appealing to you. Think of four reasons.

You are planning a holiday abroad. Read the adverts below. Which trip appeals to you more? Say why and explain why you are rejecting the other option.



ONLY £20 FOR STUDENTS.





3 Q 1.23 Read the Speaking Strategy below. Listen to a student doing the task. Tick the topics she mentions. Were any of her reasons the same as yours?

comfort	boredom	convenience
cost	interest 🔲	length of trip
safety 🔲	speed 🔲	sea sickness
,		

Speaking Strategy

When you explain which item you are choosing, try to give a number of different reasons for your choice. When you are saying why you reject the other options, try again to give more than one reason. Do not simply give opposite reasons. Try to come up with different arguments.

Listen again. Tick the phrases the stud	dent us	es.
---	---------	-----

- 1 I think I'll choose ... mainly because ...
 2 I'm opting for ... and that's because ...
- 3 The best option would be the ... because ...
- 4 I wouldn't pick the ... for the reason that ...
- 5 I wouldn't go for the ... basically because ...
 6 The (other) reason why I'm (not) choosing the ... is that ...
- 5 Read the task and look at the photos below. Compare the options. Prepare the reasons for your choice under the headings (1–4) below.

You are on holiday abroad. Which of these activities would you choose and why? Say why you are rejecting the other option.





- 1 interest for you
- 2 location
- 3 cost
- 4 time required

6 Now do the task using your notes from exercise 5.



Writing

A letter of complaint

I can write a formal letter of complaint.

Preparation

- 1 Rewrite the sentences in more formal language. Use the correct form of the words in brackets.
 - 1 I got the booking information from you. (receive)
 - 2 Your company didn't say sorry. (offer / no apology)
 - 3 I really think you are to blame. (feel strongly / at fault)
 - 4 I think your online system should be looked at. (believe / review)
 - 5 I don't want other people to have the same problems that I had. (be inconvienced / I was)
 - 6 Further problems will happen. (arise)
- 2 Read the task and the letter below. What three things does the writer suggest?

You had a very poor train journey recently. You were rather dissatisfied with the experience. Write a letter to the train company saying why you are unhappy and suggest ways in which the service could be improved.

Dear Sir or Madam

I am writing to complain about my train journey with Great Eastern on Sunday 20 July.

I booked a return ticket, reserved seats through your website and received confirmation of the booking. However, when I boarded the train, my seat was already occupied by someone with the same reservation. I therefore had to stand for 45 minutes. To make matters worse, there was a delay in the departure of the train, but we were given no information about this. We were held up for 35 minutes, which resulted in me missing my connection and losing my second seat reservation. I therefore waited for the next train. However, the air conditioning was not functioning in this train, and it was a very hot three-hour journey. There was no apology at any point.

I feel strongly that I deserve compensation for this deeply unsatisfactory journey. Firstly, I suggest that your online booking system be reviewed, as there are clearly problems. Secondly, there should be more information and help for passengers when problems occur. Finally, I request that there be bottled water available in extremely hot conditions.

 \boldsymbol{I} am applying for a refund for my journey. \boldsymbol{I} look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully

Simon Harding

Writing Strategy

When you write a formal letter:

- 1 Divide your letter into paragraphs.
- 2 In the introduction, explain why you are writing. At the end, tell the reader what you would like them to do.
- 3 Use formal language and avoid contractions and abbreviations.
- 4 Use the appropriate phrases to start and finish your letter, depending on whether you know the recipient by name.

Dear Sir or Madam → Yours faithfully

Dear Mr Black / Ms White, etc. \rightarrow Yours sincerely

- 3 Find two examples of the subjunctive form in the letter.
- 4 Rewrite the requests and demands using the subjunctive and the words in brackets.
 - 1 I think you should review the booking procedure. (suggest)
 - 2 I think you should announce delays. (recommend)
 - 3 I think you should delay your decision. (propose)
 - 4 I want my ticket to be refunded. (demand)

Writing Guide

On a recent holiday, you and a group of friends went on a sightseeing bus tour. You were very dissatisfied with the experience. Write a letter to the company saying why you are unhappy and suggest ways in which the tour might be improved.

5 Read the task above and make notes about what you will complain about. Use the ideas below or your own ideas.

itinerary missed out an important place tour didn't run on time tour guide was unenthusiastic / too quiet no toilet on the bus

6 Write your letter of complaint.

	CHECK YOUR WORK
0	Have you
5	organised your letter in paragraphs?
	started and finished the letter appropriately?
	avoided contractions and informal language?

Review Unit 4

Vocabulary

Vocabalary	6 Would you ever rough if you didn't have
1 Use a word from A and a word from B to make compound nouns. Then complete the sentences.	anywhere to stay?
A back camp camper city guest package self-catering youth	Mark: /6
B apartment break holiday hostel house packing site van	Word Skills 4 Complete the sentences with the correct adverb form of
When my friends were in New Zealand, they hired a to travel around South Island.	the adjectives in brackets. 1 It took us half an hour to get there. (rough)
2 The price of our included the flight, the hotel and some of the excursions.	We booked the hotel to ensure that we got a nice room. (early)
3 The they chose had a field for caravans as well as several for tents.	3 Try not to look like a tourist when you're alone in a foreign country. (hard)
My parents have gone on a to Rome to celebrate their wedding anniversary.	4 I looked at the bill to make sure it was correct. (close)
5 The we stayed at only had six rooms, but it was very comfortable and the owners were nice.	5 The weather has been terrible I hope it improves for our holiday. (late)
6 We prefer to do our own cooking, so we tend to rent a when we go away.	We're going to have to decide where to go soon, or everything will be booked up. (pretty)
7 is the cheapest way to see a country. 8 There were ten people to a dormitory in the we slept in.	Mark: /6
Mark: /8	5 Complete the mini-dialogues with the phrasal verbs below. get around get back go off pull up set off stop over
2 Replace the underlined words with the synonyms below. dingy overcrowded remote run-down unspoiled vibrant	A What time are you leaving in the morning? B We're going to at 6.30 a.m. A Did you walk everywhere in London? B No, we used the tourist bus to
Rio de Janeiro is at its most <u>exciting</u> at carnival time. ————	3 A What time does your plane land? B At 6.00; we should to the house
2 Some of Britain's beach resorts are rather <u>neglected</u> .	around 8.00. 4 A Have you got a direct flight?
The <u>isolated</u> village we stayed in was over 30 km from the nearest big town	B No, it's going to in Doha on the way.5 A Did you go on holiday with your parents?
Many of the beaches in Menorca are completely <u>natural</u> . ———————————————————————————————————	B Yes, but I could and do my own thing. 6 A Where shall I park?
5 It's best to avoid the city centre at weekends because the shops are <u>full of people</u> .	B Just outside the hotel for now. Mark: /6
6 They gave us a <u>dark and dirty</u> room at the back of the hotel so we asked if we could change.	6 Complete the sentences with the phrases below.
Mark: /6	The best option The reason why
3 Complete the questions with travel collocations. Use one or two words.	1for an elderly couple would be a cruise, because they wouldn't have to walk very far.
1 Would you a campfire on the beach? 2 Can you a tent and take it down again on	the holiday camp for the reason that it would be too noisy.
your own? 3 Do you light when you go on holiday or do	3 for the B&B, and that's because they tend to be cheaper.
you take a lot of luggage? 4 Where do you go when you want to from it	4l'm not choosing the houseboat is that it might be very cramped.

5 Do you ever _____

the beaten track?

Review Unit 4

	-	Codding on Product Land Code
	5	
	_	because I haven't got a bike.
	6	,
		mainly because I love skiing.
		Mark: /6
G	ra	ımmar
7	CI	noose the correct answers (a–c).
	1	Holly's flight from Paris to San Francisco leaves at 9 a.m.
		At 6 p.m., she for nine hours.
		a will have flown b will be flying
		c will have been flying
	2	I'm doing an online Spanish course before I go to Spain.
		I hope I enough by the time I go.
		a will have learned b will be learning
		c will have been learning
	3	My dad leaves work at 6.30 p.m. and doesn't get home
		until 7.15 p.m. I can't call him now because he
		a will have driven b will be driving
		c will have been driving
	4	We usually have dinner at 6.00. I'm sure we by 7.00 so
		you can call me then.
		a will have finished b will be finishing
		c will have been finishing
	5	I've been saving £150 a month since September. By the end
		of the year, I£600.
		a will have saved b will be saving
		c will have been saving
	6	The coach to Edinburgh leaves at 11 a.m. and takes nine and
		a half hours. At 6 p.m., we on the coach.
		a will have sat b will be sitting
		c will have been sitting
		Mark: /6
_		
8		omplete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs brackets.
		I won't go to the beach tomorrow if it (rain)
	2	Tony's going to pack his bags before he to bed. (go)
	3	I'll be able to tell you what time I'm leaving once I
		the time of my flight. (check)
	4	We'll be staying with my aunt when we in
	•	Vancouver. (be)
	5	Can you call me after you dinner? (have)
		I'm not going to tell you about my trip until I can see that
	-	youto me. (listen)
		Mark: /6
		Mark. / O

Use of English

9 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

the accident, several customer cancelled in 2 th is now building a replacement	npany Virgin Galactic closely pieces during a test flight. Since rs who had booked a flight have he trip never happens. The compal spaceship, and commercial
	been fully tested.
Only then 4 the	
Spaceport America. But they v	vill only be allowed to fly on
5 that they pass	rigorous medical checks. Those
declared fit to fly will 6	to do a training course in
preparation for the launch. Thr	
	finally take off. During the flight,
	of the Earth from space,
and at the furthest point, they gravity six mir to the spacer and friends to celebrate having	will experience floating in zero nutes. When they get oort, they will join their family
	,
	Mark: /

I can ...

Read the statements. Think about your progress and tick one

= I need more practice.	+++ = No problem

** = I sometimes find this difficult.

	**	***
I can describe types of holidays.		
I can use future continuous and future perfect forms.		
I can identify the context of a conversation.		
I can use future time clauses.		
I can use adverbs and adverbial phrases.		
I can understand a text about adventure holidays.		
I can discuss a topic and select and justify my choice from a range of options.		
I can write a formal letter of complaint.		

Total:

/60

Exam Skills Trainer

Reading

Strategy

The rise of Airbnb

Remember that the questions in a multiple-choice task always refer to the text. Do not be tempted to choose an answer because it seems right according to your knowledge and experience. There will be specific information in the text that indicates the right answer, even when this contradicts your own ideas.

1 Read the text and choose the correct answers (A, B, C, or D).

In 2007, design graduates, Joe Gebbie and Brian Chesky, were struggling to pay the rent for their San Francisco apartment. When they heard that there was a conference coming to town and there were no hotel rooms available, they came up with the idea of putting their living room floor up for rent. The next day, they created the website airbedandbreakfast.com where they advertised three airbeds in their home at \$80 each a night, breakfast included. Only six days later, they had three guests sleeping on their floor. They knew immediately that this was the start of something big.

Being budding entrepreneurs, the pair decided to take their idea further. They enlisted Gebbie's former flatmate, Nathan Blecharczyk, a computer science graduate, to develop their website. Their idea was to target conferences and festivals across the USA, getting local people to list their rooms and travellers to book them. The new website was completed just in time for the 2008 Democratic National Convention in Denver, at which Barack Obama was due to speak in front of 80,000 people. Within a week, they had 800 listings, an achievement which dealt in part with the shortage of hotel rooms, but did not solve their financial problems, as the site was not making any money.

The team decided that they would have to handle payment for the bookings if they were to make their venture financially viable. They began to charge three per cent to the host and between six and twelve per cent to the traveller, depending on the price of the booking. Meanwhile, investors had started showing interest in the company. By April 2009, Gebbie, Chesky and Blecharcyzk were making enough money to cover their living expenses. When larger investments began to arrive, they moved the company out of their flat into a new state-of-the-art office and hired more staff.

Airbnb hit one million bookings in January 2011, and since then it has gone from strength to strength. It hasn't been plain sailing, however. When one host complained on her blog later that year that her house had been trashed by an Airbnb renter, the story was reported internationally in the press. The company responded by announcing that in future hosts would be insured and there would be a 24/7 manned helpline to deal with any complaints. A month later, another victim of vandalism was compensated immediately and has gone on to rent out his apartment through the website again. Thanks to quick thinking like this, the company now has over 1.5 million listings in 34,000 cities in 190 countries, and is rumoured to be worth around \$20 billion.

- Gebbie and Chesky decided to rent out floor space hecause
- A they wanted to attract people to a conference in their area
- B they needed money to redecorate the living room.
- C there weren't any hotels near their local conference centre.
- **D** there was a temporary need for accommodation in the city.
- 2 The new website designed by Nathan Blecharczyk enabled Gebbie and Chesky to
- A accommodate most of the guests at a Denver convention.
- B make a huge profit as soon as it was launched.
- C rent out properties nationally.
- D put travellers in touch with hosts abroad.
- 3 When booking a room with Airbnb,
 - A it is only the guest who pays.
 - B both the guest and the host have to pay.
 - C the guest pays a fixed percentage of the price.
 - D the guest and the host share the cost equally.
- 4 Until April 2009, Gebbie and Chesky were running the business from
 - A a brand new building.
 - B a friend's house.
 - C their own home.

 D a flat on Wall Street.
- ${\bf 5}\;$ In paragraph four, the writer mentions the two acts of
 - A to illustrate the speed with which the company reacts
 - to problems.

 B to highlight how irresponsible some of the travellers are.
 - C to emphasise the different treatment that some hosts receive.
 - D to show how quick the media are to criticise the

Listening

Strategy

In a multiple-matching task, the words used in the recordings will usually not match the words used in the questions. Before you listen, think about the words and phrases a speaker might use to express the ideas in the options in a different way.

2 Read the Strategy and find phrases in the questions in exercise 3 that could be paraphrased with the phrases below.

- 1 ask for help
- 2 wasn't getting on with
- 3 head home earlier than planned ______
- 4 didn't bother taking
 - 5 gave up using

Exam Skills Trainer

3	1.24	You will hear four speakers talking about their				
	experiences of camping. Match questions A-E with					
	speaker	s 1–4. There is one extra question.				

Which speaker ...

- A didn't feel comfortable with the people they were with?
- B wasn't able to use all of the facilities they were provided with?
- C omitted to pack something essential for the trip?
- D had to call for assistance in the middle of the night?
- E was forced to cut their holiday short?

Speaker 1: ___ Speaker 3: _

Speaker 2: ___ Speaker 4: _

Use of English

Strategy

Read the instructions carefully so that you know how many words to write in the gap. Make sure that the second sentence expresses exactly the same meaning as the first one and that you have not added any new ideas or left anything out. Use the key word exactly as it is written and do not change it in any way.

4 Read the Strategy. Read the sentence and choose the correct transformation, a, b, c, or d. Why are the other sentences wrong?

I've never stayed in such a bad hotel. (ever)

a That's the first hotel I've ever stayed in.

- t mats the mist noter ive ever stayed in.
- b That's the worst hotel I've ever stayed in.c That's the bad hotel everyone stayed in.
- d That's the very bad hotel I've ever stayed in.
- 5 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use between two and five words, including the word in brackets. Do not change the word in brackets.
 - A package holiday is nowhere near as expensive as a cruise. (far)
 A cruise is

package holiday.

2 | knew it was a bad idea for us to leave home so late. (have)

We _____so late.

3 It's going to take me half an hour to make lunch. (will)

- 3 It's going to take me half an hour to make lunch. (will)
 In half an hour,
- 4 If they don't give us another room, we're changing hotels. (unless)

We're changing hotels _

____ another room.

5 Sorry, but I don't want to go swimming today. (rather) Sorry, but ______ swimming today.

6 Texpect you were sad to leave after having such a good time. (must)

You ______ to leave after having such a good time.

Speaking

Strategy

In a photo comparison task, you may be asked to talk about the advantages and disadvantages of an activity or a situation.

6 Look at the two photos below that show different places to stay. Compare the photos using the points below.

ocation • facilities • cost • activiti



Writing

Strategy

Learn how to use fixed expressions and phrases that are typical of formal letters, such as letters of complaint.

7 Read the Strategy. Then replace the underlined phrases with the more formal phrases below.

action you intend to take express strong dissatisfaction in the circumstances misleading refund in full regret to inform you

- 1 I am writing to <u>say that I am not satisfied</u> with the trip organised by your travel agency.
- 2 I am sorry to say to you that the information given by your sales assistant was not true.
- 3 In this situation, I feel that it would be appropriate for you to give me back the whole of the cost of our hotel stay.
- 4 Please let me know as soon as possible what you plan to do.

8 Read the task below and write your letter.

You have just come back from a class trip. Unfortunately, the trip did not meet your expectations. Write a letter to the organiser of the trip in which you say why you were dissatisfied with the programme and transport and suggest ways in which the agency could avoid similar problems in the future.

Relationships

Vocabulary



Relating to people
I can talk about relationships and describe behaviour.

b admires c has a lot in common with

6 What problem do the two speakers in dialogue 6 have with

a They have nothing in common with him. b They don't see eye to eye with him.

	Complete the sentences with the words below.	${\bf 4} \ \ {\bf Complete} \ {\bf the} \ {\bf sentences} \ {\bf with} \ {\bf the} \ {\bf prepositions} \ {\bf below}.$				
-	close common eye sorry wary wavelength	about (x3) for (x2) on				
	1 I don't really understand Kevin or his jokes. We really aren't on the same	 I was complimented my winning entry for the poetry competition by the head teacher. 				
	2 Sara feels for me for failing my exam, but it was my own fault. 3 We've got a lot in with each other and we share quite a few interests.	2 My dad is always being teasedhis terrible cooking. 3 We were warnedthe dangers of cycling at night. 4 Sam was told offnot taking his medicine. 5 The whole class might be lecturedbehaving well				
	4 My mother doesn't see to eye with me about my plans for the weekend.	5 The whole class might be lectured behaving well when in public places.6 We've all been praised our performance in the play				
	5 Although Jack has moved to London, we are still very and are in contact every day. 6 I'm a bit of giving my email address to people online that I don't know.	5 Match the verbs below with the situations. flatter insult nag praise warn 1 'That's a fantastic piece of work, Lily, Well done!'				
	Replace the underlined words with the correct form of the	2 'I really like your new suit. You look great in it!'				
	verbs below.	3 'You are a complete idiot, aren't you?'				
	adore envy look down on look up to respect trust	4 'Don't jump into the sea from the rocks. It's extremely				
	1 We should <u>treat</u> the environment <u>carefully</u> and not pollute	dangerous!'				
	it 2 Andy <u>thinks very highly of</u> his big brother Tom and wants to be just like him	5 'Oh, please, please, please let me stay out late on Friday night. I promise that if you do, I'll'				
	3 Some of his friends <u>are jealous of</u> the success that he has had.	6 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs below compliment nag praise tease tell warn				
	4 My sister warned me not to have confidence in him.					
	5 She's afraid they think they are better than her because she doesn't have a job	Well, it's been a bit of a strange day. My mum 1				
	6 They have one son and they <u>really love</u> him	me off this morning for arriving home late last night, but then				
3		she 2 me for my good marks in the test! On the bus to school, my best mate Harry kept 3 me				
	1 The man in dialogue 1 suggests that he and Eva	about lending him my mountain bike. He went on and on about				
	a are very close to each other b adore each other	it for the whole journey! Once at school, everyone made jokes				
	c have nothing in common with each other	and 4 me about my new haircut. Well, everyone				
	2 The woman in the second dialogue her friend's family.	except for Chloe! She 5 me on my 'stylish' hair				
	 a looks down on b feels sorry for c adores The two people in dialogue 3the man they see. 	and said it looked great! But then I realised that I'd left my				
	a are wary of b are on the same wavelength as	English homework at home. My English teacher 6				
	c respect	me not to forget my homework again and gave me extra work as				
	4 How does the girl in dialogue 4 feel about her brother?	a punishment!				
	a She envies him. b She looks up to him.					
	c She despises him.					
1	5 The girl in dialogue 5 feels confident that her friend Amv.					

a can trust

Grammar

Negative structures

I can use negative structures.

1 Choose the correct answers (a-c) to complete the text.



We 1 expect our family or friends to turn against us and there can 2_ be a worse betrayal than one committed by a best friend. 3__ in literature has this been more powerfully expressed than by Shakespeare in his play Julius Caesar. Caesar sees his best friend Brutus among his murderers does he realise the extent of the betrayal against him.

has Brutus stabbed him than Caesar falls to his death, speaking the famous line 'Et tu, Brute?', meaning 'And you, Brutus?' This is now a phrase often used to express sadness and surprise when you are let down by someone considered to be a trusted friend. Perhaps, like Caesar, it's 6__ we are let down badly by a good friend that we appreciate how devastating a betrayal can be.

	1	a	nowhere	b	never	C	no sooner		
	2	a	hardly	b	not until	C	only if		
	3	a	Not only	b	In no way	c	Nowhere		
	4	a	At no time	b	Only when	c	Rarely		
	5	a	No sooner	b	Only once	C	Under no circumstance		
	6	a	not only	b	hardly	c	not until		
			rite the words in brackets in the correct order to complete e sentences.						
1 Rarely (so / she / felt / unhappy / had). 2 Nowhere (find / will / you / a / friend / better).					d).				
					d / better).				
	3	Only (argued / have / ever / once / we).							
	4	In no (did / to / upset / I / anyone / way / mean)!							
	5	At (should / lies / tell / time / no / you).							
6 Under (can / him / no / you / circumstances / trus					stances / trust).				

7 Not (we / will / get / results / Friday / until / our).

3 Match the sentence halves.

- 1 She was sorry a split up with Nick?
- 2 Do you regret b not to keep his promise. 3 Wouldn't it be sensible c to go to bed early?
- 4 Hasn't she d not to lose her friendship.
- 5 Weren't you e at the café yesterday? 6 He is certain
- f not inviting Jane? 7 He'll be lucky g not to see him at the club.

	Ada	Hi, Jan! 1 you go out	with Sara last night?
	Jan	Yes, we went out for a pizza.	
	Ada	I was really sorry 2t	o be able to join you.
		Did you have a good time?	
	Jan	Not really, no. No sooner 3	we arrived
		4 we had a row!	
	Ada	Oh, that's not good.	
	Jan	I know. And not 5 th	nat, but she isn't
		speaking to me now.	
	Ada	6it be a good idea t	to phone her and
		apologise?	
	Jan	Probably – I regret not 7	to her at the
		time, but I was too angry.	
	Ada	Well, under * circun	nstances should you
		forget to say sorry!	
		plete the second sentence so that le first. Write up to five words in e	
	as th	plete the second sentence so that he first. Write up to five words in e e mustn't under any circumstances	ach sentence. lose this key.
	as th 1 W Ur	plete the second sentence so that he first. Write up to five words in ea e mustn't under any circumstances hader	ach sentence. lose this key.
!	as th 1 W Ur 2 Th	plete the second sentence so that te first. Write up to five words in ea e mustn't under any circumstances nder uis band isn't at all special.	ach sentence. lose this key. lose this key.
	as th 1 W Ur 2 Th In	plete the second sentence so that e first. Write up to five words in e: e mustn't under any circumstances ider iis band isn't at all special.	ach sentence. lose this key. lose this key. at all special.
!	as th 1 W Ur 2 Th In 3 I re	plete the second sentence so that he first. Write up to five words in ei- e mustn't under any circumstances nder his band isn't at all special.	ach sentence. lose this key. lose this key. lose this key. at all special.
	as the 1 W Ur 2 The In 3 I re	plete the second sentence so that he first. Write up to five words in ei he mustn't under any circumstances her his band isn't at all special. her here the going as soon as I got then here sooner	ach sentence. lose this key. lose this key. at all special. e. I regretted going
	as th 1 W Ur 2 Th In 3 In No 4 M	plete the second sentence so that he first. Write up to five words in ei he mustn't under any circumstances her his band isn't at all special. egretted going as soon as I got then hosooner y friends haven't judged me at any	ach sentence. lose this key. lose this key. at all special. e. I regretted going time.
	as th 1 W Ur 2 Th In 3 Irr No 4 M At	plete the second sentence so that he first. Write up to five words in ei- e mustn't under any circumstances ider his band isn't at all special. hegretted going as soon as I got there is sooner y friends haven't judged me at any no	ach sentence. lose this key. lose this key. at all special. e. I regretted going time. judged me.
	as th 1 W Ur 2 Th In 3 I re No 4 M At 5 Bil	plete the second sentence so that he first. Write up to five words in eight and the mustn't under any circumstances hader is band isn't at all special. He gretted going as soon as I got there is sooner yoriends haven't judged me at any no living the more in	ach sentence. lose this key. lose this key. at all special e. I regretted going time. judged me. t.
	as th 1 W Ur 2 Th In 3 Irr No 4 M At 5 Bil Bil	plete the second sentence so that he first. Write up to five words in exity he mustn't under any circumstances hader his band isn't at all special. The segretted going as soon as I got then he sooner he friends haven't judged me at any no ho ho wished he'd kept his news a secre he regretted	ach sentence. lose this key. lose this key. at all special. e. I regretted going time. judged me. t. a secret.
	as th 1 W Ur 2 Th In 3 In No 4 M At 5 Bil Bil 6 It	plete the second sentence so that the first. Write up to five words in expension and the mustn't under any circumstances ander is band isn't at all special. Begretted going as soon as I got there is sooner in the sooner in th	ach sentence. lose this key. lose this key. at all special. e. I regretted going time. judged me. t. a secret.
	as the Ur Ur 2 The In No. At M. At 5 Bill 6 It W	plete the second sentence so that he first. Write up to five words in eight and the first write up to five words in eight and the first write up to five words in eight and the first at all special. He gretted going as soon as I got there is sooner of the first and th	ach sentence. lose this key. lose this key. at all special. e. I regretted going time. judged me. t. a secret.
	as the Ur Ur 2 The In No. At M. At 5 Bill 6 It W	plete the second sentence so that the first. Write up to five words in expension and the mustn't under any circumstances ander is band isn't at all special. Begretted going as soon as I got there is sooner in the sooner in th	ach sentence. lose this key. lose this key. at all special. e. I regretted going. time. judged me. t. a secret. st.
	as th 1 W Ur 2 Th In 3 In No 4 M At 5 Bil 6 It W 7 I'n	plete the second sentence so that te first. Write up to five words in e: e mustn't under any circumstances ider is band isn't at all special. eggretted going as soon as I got then o sooner y friends haven't judged me at any: no I wished he'd kept his news a secre I regretted was fortunate that we didn't get lo: e were lucky n sure Jerry went into town last night	ach sentence. lose this key. lose this key. at all special. I regretted going. time. judged me. t. a secret. st. town last night?
	as th 1 W Ur 2 Th In 3 In No 4 M At 5 Bil 6 It W 7 I'n	plete the second sentence so that the first. Write up to five words in existed in the mustn't under any circumstances of the mustn't at all special. The special segretted going as soon as I got then so sooner of triends haven't judged me at any thought of the must haven't judged me at any thought of the must have didn't get love were lucky. The special segret went into town last night and the must have a decision until I've spoke and the must have a de	ach sentence. lose this key. lose this key. at all special. I regretted going. time. judged me. t. a secret. st. town last night?

Listening

Sibling rivalry

I can understand a discussion about sibling rivalry.



Listening Strategy

Remember that spoken English can sound quite different from written language. In fast speech, fluent speakers often shorten or omit certain elements. It is possible to train yourself to understand fast speech. You do not need to imitate fast speakers, but focus on trying to understand what they are talking about.

- 1 Q 1.26 Read the Listening Strategy. Listen to a student talking about his sister. Answer the questions.
 - 1 What was Ella's behaviour like?
 - 2 What kind of child was the speaker?
 - 3 What did people use to say to the speaker?
 - 4 How did the speaker feel about his sister when they were young?
 - 5 When did their relationship improve?
- 2 Match the features of fast speech (a-c) with examples 1-3.
- a Tell everybody sounds like Tell leverybody.
- b That's my ... sounds like Thas my ...
- c So early sounds like so wearly; my uncle sounds like my yuncle
- Consonants are sometimes inserted between two vowel sounds
- 2 Consonant sounds at the end of words run into a following vowel sound.
- 3 Sounds, usually consonants, sometimes disappear.

- 3 Q.1.27 Listen to the sentences from the text. Write down one or two features of fast speech that you hear in each.
 - 1 My sister was born with big, blue eyes ...
 - 2 She looked like an angel.
 - 3 This was not good news for me.
 - 4 Sometimes I pushed her away.
- 5 Later, when I got better at school ...
- 6 Now I think she's great too.
- 4 1.27 Listen again and repeat. Try to copy the pronunciation.
- 5 Q 1.28 Listen to two dialogues and a monologue. Choose the correct answer (a-c).
 - 1 How does the first dialogue end?
 - a The speakers refuse to listen to each other's point of view.
 - b The speakers eventually come to an acknowledgment of each other's viewpoints.
 - c The speakers decide that the disagreement can't be resolved.
 - 2 What caused the speaker of the monologue to feel happier during her childhood?
 - a Her parents had triplets.
 - b A relative moved in with them.
 - c Her brothers spent more time playing with her.
 - 3 In the second dialogue, what do Linda and Cathy tell the interviewer?
 - a How their parents' divorce affected them emotionally.
 - b How Cathy continually annoyed Linda.
 - c What the main cause of problems between them was.
- 6 1.29 Listen and write the sentences from the listening.
 - 2
- 3
- 4 _____
- 6
- 7 Q1.29 How are the sentences in exercise 6 spoken? Mark the features of fast speech from exercise 2. Then listen again and check. Practise saying the sentences.



Articles and quantifiers

I can use articles and quantifiers.

1 Correct the mistakes with the bold articles in the text.

•••••	
MOON'S BEST	
FRIEND	TO A SAL

Photographer Ben Moon has made the emotional short film about 'a best friend he's ever had: 2the dog called Denali. Denali was just two years old when Ben rescued him from an animal shelter. They spent nearly fifteen years together, travelling around 3United States in 4the camper van, going to the beach and spending time with friends. And when Ben was getting over 5the serious illness, Denali was constantly by his side, sleeping on his hospital bed. 6A film won two awards at a festival in 7the Colorado, and has taken the internet by storm with its moving story of the close friendship Ben and Denali shared for so long.

2 Complete the sentences with a/an, the or - (no article). film we just watched must be _____ worst I've seen! 2 She works as _____ volunteer, helping ___ elderly. 3 Although I don't generally like ____ cats, I like ___ next door. 4 Just put ____ shopping on ____ table over there, will you? 5 We met _____ family from _____ Caribbean at the carnival. 6 _____ first camping trip I went on wasn't in _____ Europe.

a none

	7 My dad's got	new job, but	job is in another cit
	8 I've got ide	a: why don't we get	takeaway late
3	Choose the best op sentences.	otion (a, b or c) to co	mplete the
	1 The forecast says	there will be just	rain at the weekend
	a little	b a little	c a lot of
	2 the best musi	c I've heard is on this	album.
	a Some of	b Both of	c Several of
	3 The children didn	't make mess.	
	a all of	b a lot of	c much of
	4 of my shirts n	eeds washing!	
	a Every	b Every one	c All
	5 drivers follow	the new driving regi	ulations.
	a Some of	b None	c Few
	6 I wouldn't recom	mend of the café	s in town.

b either

4	CI	hoose the option that i	is <u>not</u> possible in eac	h s	entence.
	1	of these scarves wo	ould be a good preser	nt f	or Leo.
		a Either	b Both	c	Every
	2	her friends was at h	nome when she called	d.	
		a Every one of	b None	c	None of
	3	There's time before	the next lesson begi	ns.	
		a little			
	4	of us agreed that th			
		a Every		C	Every one
	5	Let's buy these cake			
		a both			
	6	She organised of he			
				C	every one
	7	buddy movies are p			
		a Some			A lot
	8	I know people who			
		a several	b a lot	C	many
5	C	omplete the sentences	with the words belo	w.	There are
		wo extra words.			
	а	both few many	no none of one		
	1	It was a pretty boring	party as there were so	0	
		people there.			
	2	Dan got every	of the answers	s ri	ght in
		yesterday's homework			
	3	I only have	little cash – could	yo	u lend me
		some?		-	
	4	She tried on five pairs	of shoes, but		of ther
		fitted.			
	5	'Would you prefer orar	nge or apple juice?' 'I d	dor	n't mind –
		I like of	them.'		

6 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

6 The forecast says there'll be __

In ¹	recent surv	ey, two thousand British
men and	women were aske	d about their friendships.
		d out to be twice as good
		ith one in three saying
		meone they had met at
		e in six men were best
friends wi		chool friend. Although
		and a hundred Facebook
		nbers in their phones,
		_ close friends – on
		sexes admitted
		person in their friendship
		and; although not quite as
group tria		
		en confessed to this, it was
		survey concluded
		expect to have fewer
close frier	nds as we get olde	er, with only about three
by the tin	ne we retire.	

c every one

sunshine today.

Word Skills

Phrasal verbs

I can use phrasal verbs.

1 Choose the correct answers to complete the text.

In the teen movie *The Duff*, Bianca is enjoying her senior high school year until her neighbour, Wes, lets slip that she's known as a 'duff' – someone less attractive who makes her friends feel prettier and more popular. Bianca



believes that her best friends, Jess and Casey, have "_ by making fun of her, so she 2_ their friendship, 'unfriending' them on social media and in person. Bianca's friendship with Wes grows when she 3_ helping her become more popular so that she can get the attention of cool guitar-playing Toby, who she likes. However, bad girl Madison used to 4_ Wes and she's jealous because he and Bianca 5_ so well. And when Bianca eventually plucks up the courage to 6_ on a date, she can't believe he doesn't 7_ but he's only using her to get closer to Jess and Casey! If you want to know how things turn out, you'll have to watch the film for yourself!

	1	a	put her through	b	let her down	c	turned her
	2	а	calls off	h	puts down	c	gets over
	3	а	puts him off		puts him through		talks him into
			go out with		put up with		split up with
			turn up		get on		look after
			make Toby up		mess Toby about		ask Toby out
			turn her down		put her down		put her
		-		-	F	_	through
•	Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below. get over not get on not make up not turn up put through talk into						
					d me out on a date	an	d then
	2	Ro	ob had a huge row	wi	th Sam last week ar	nd	they still
	3		urprisingly, he had rlfriend when they		trouble		his
	4				me		50
			uch recently.				
	5	ľv	re made my mind ι	ıρ,	so don't try		me
			going				
	6	It'	's difficult having f	rie	nds who		with each

3 Complete the text with the correct particles.

After my best friend broke 1 with her last
boyfriend, Sam, she didn't go 2 with anyone
for a few months. Sam had been messing her
3 for ages and she couldn't put 4 with it
any longer, so in the end, she decided to split
5 with him. But now she's met someone new.
He's picking her 6 from school later today, so
I'll finally get to meet him!

VOCAB BOOST!

When you learn new phrasal verbs, make sure you know if they are separable or inseparable. Use sth or sb to show the position of the object or write sentences with personal examples to help you remember them.

ask (sb) out (sb): I was pleased when my brother asked out my best friend / asked my best friend out.

bring sth ↔ up 1 to mention a subject or start to talk about it

get over sth/sb to return to your usual state of health, happiness, etc. after an illness, shock, the end of a relationship, etc.

4 Read the Vocab boost! box and the dictionary entries. Are the phrasal verbs separable or inseparable? Put them in the correct column in the table. Then add the phrasal verbs below.

call off let down look after run into take after turn down

Separable	Inseparable

5 Write sentences to illustrate the meaning of the phrasal verbs in the table in exercise 4.

	(bring up)
2	(call off)
3	(get over)
4	(let down)
5	(look after)
6	(run into)
7	(take after)
R	(turn down)

other.

Reading

Love is in the air

I can understand an article about research into relationships.

Revision: Student's Book page 58

1 Complete the sentences with the words below.

genes guinea pigs immune systems mate offspring organs paper proof

- They asked for students to be experiment on sleep.
- 2 Dr Smith is presenting a thermodynamic theory.
- have you got to show that your theory is correct?
- 4 All animals have developed ways of attracting 5 The illness can be avoided by modifying the
- in people's DNA. 6 Our protect us against illness and
- infection. 7 Birds will protect and feed their_
- they are able to fly. 8 Hospitals need more donors so that they can replace damaged

Reading Strategy

When you come across an unfamiliar word in a text, ask yourself if you need to know its meaning to do the task. If you do, first decide what part of speech it is. Then try to work out from the context what it might mean.

2 Read the Reading Strategy. Then read the text and try to guess the meanings of the underlined words from the context. Check your answers in a dictionary.

3 Answer the questions about the article.

Which paragraph mentions ...

- 1 relationships being formed?
- 2 conversations about views, dreams and beliefs?
- 3 the science of love?
- 4 the aim of the experiment? ___

4 Choose the correct answers (a-d).

- 1 Thanks to Arthur Aron, we have learned that
 - a couples are mistaken about why they fell in love.
 - b smell attracts people to each other.
 - c love is the result of a chemical reaction.
 - d people can fall in love quickly.
- 2 The aim of Arthur Aron's research was to see
 - a if people would fall in love after four minutes.
- b if there was a big difference between fancying someone and loving them.
- c if intimacy could be provoked.
- d how many questions it would take to make people feel
- 3 Aron explained that his questions
 - a would make people famous.
 - b should be done while people stare at each other.
 - c would help people have experiences together.
 - d would make people feel that they had a connection.
- 4 The experiment that tested Aron's theory resulted in
 - a some people hoping to stay in contact.
 - b a few marriages.
 - c all the participants quickly falling in love.
 - d only a few of the partners forming a connection.



A Although couples will rarely believe it, scientific factors have a lot to do with falling in love. Research has shown that scent plays an important role in choosing a mate. Other experiments have demonstrated that love is caused by combinations of chemicals in the brain. Furthermore, New York psychologist Arthur Aron applied the principles of science to demonstrate that the process of falling in love could be speeded up ... to just 45 minutes!

B Some scientists claim that we take between ninety seconds and four minutes to decide if we fancy someone. However, the leap from being attracted to someone to falling in love with them is a big one, and Aron wanted to find out if the closeness associated with feelings of being in love could be created artificially.

C Aron produced a paper that included 36 questions designed to encourage intimacy if couples answered them together. The questions came in three sets with each set covering increasingly intimate ground. They covered many personal opinions and experiences; for example, 'Would you like to be famous?', 'What does friendship mean to you?" and 'When did you last cry in front of another person? After answering the questions together, the couples were directed to stare into each other's eves for four minutes without saying anything.

D Aron tested his questions on pairs of strangers and then asked them to stare at each other. All of the participants reported feeling close to their partners and many of them swapped contact details after the experiment. So if you're keen on someone and would like to get closer to them, it would seem that Aron's questions could help you to achieve your objective.



5**G**

Speaking

Photo description and comparison

I can describe and compare photos and give opinions about friendship.

1	Rewrite the sentences using must have, may (not) have,	
	or can't have.	

- 1 I'm sure that they were good friends before the argument as they were always together.
- 2 It's possible that there was a misunderstanding.
- 3 It's impossible that she said that about her friend.
- 4 It's certain that she liked her friend's brother.
- 5 It's possible that he wasn't attracted to her.
- 6 It's impossible that they went out together.
- 2 Look at the photo and write sentences about it. Use must be / may be / can't be.



Speaking Strategy

When you talk about photos, say what you can guess or deduce as well as about what you can see. Use modal verbs of deduction and phrases such as It appears to show..., I can't be certain, but ..., etc.

- 3 Q 1.30 Read the Speaking Strategy. Listen to a student describing the photo in exercise 3 and complete the sentences.
 - 1 The photo seems to show a family _
 - 2 It looks as if the son is
 - 3 Judging by their expressions, I'd say that the parents are

4	I might	be	wrong,	but	think	the	mother	is	asking	him	to
---	---------	----	--------	-----	-------	-----	--------	----	--------	-----	----

- 5 I can't be certain, but I don't think she's ______.
- 6 The father looks _____
- 4 Look at photos A and B in exercise 5 below. Complete these sentences with your own ideas.

Photo A

Judging by the mother's expression, I'd say ____ It looks as if the daughter is ____

I might be wrong, but I think the father is

Photo B

The photo seems to show _

I can't be certain, but I don't think the daughter

The son looks

5 Look at the task and the photos below. Then read the questions (1–5) and write answers.

Compare the photos. Then say whether you think arguments between family members are more or less serious than arguments between friends. Give reasons.



- 1 What is the common theme of the photos?
- 2 What can you see in both photos?
- 3 What is the main difference between the photos?
- 4 Which are more serious: family arguments or arguments between friends?
- 5 What are the reasons for your answer to question 4?
- 6 Now do the task using your notes from exercise 5.



Writing

An opinion essay

I can write an opinion essay on the topic of friendship.

Preparation

A friend in need is a friend indeed. This saying means that a real friend is there for you in times of trouble. Write an essay in which you give your own opinion of this view, taking into consideration the way we make friends these days and situations where you can recognise real friends.

- 1 Read the task above. How many elements are there to cover?
- 2 Read the essay. In which paragraphs does the writer cover each element of the task?

Writing Strategy

Use a variety of grammatical structures and vocabulary instead of simple sentences. This will make your essay more interesting and more effective.

- 3 Read the Writing Strategy and underline an example of each of the structures below in the essay.
 - 1 contrasting clauses with but and although
 - 2 an example of another linker
 - 3 an example of preparatory it
 - 4 a sentence starting with Not that ...
 - 5 an example of doldid for emphasis
- 4 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.
 - 1 She's a good friend, but she can be a bit moody.
 Although
 - 2 People say that you must be a good friend to have a good friend.
 - 3 Having true friends is important.
 - **4** I tried talking to him, but he didn't understand what I was saying.
 - I tried talking to him, not that _______

 5 I try hard, but she won't be friends with me.
 - 5 I try hard, but she won't be friends with me.
 I try hard. However,
- 5 Rewrite the sentences using do/did for emphasis.
 - 1 Hiked her.
 - 2 'Why didn't you tell him I was here?' 'I told him!'
 - 3 Although she's twice my age, we have a lot in common.
 - 4 I think he is a good friend.
 - 5 'You don't support me enough.' 'I support you!'



- I find that the saying 'A friend in need is a friend indeed' is a true one and I wholeheartedly agree with it. I do think that a true friend is one who is always there for you, no matter what.
- In the internet age, people are more sociable than ever. It's easy to make lots of friends online because no one makes any demands on you. Not that it isn't good to have a wide circle of people to socialise with. Nevertheless, it is said that most of us can count our number of true friends on the fingers of one hand, and I personally think that it is in times of trouble that you find out who your real friends are.
- C I have known my closest friend Mina since primary school and she remains the nicest, gentlest person I know. We rarely have arguments. Not that we agree on everything, but we generally have a caring and supportive relationship. When my mum was very ill in hospital, she was the truest friend of all. She never once complained that I was bad company, like one or two of my other friends, and I could always talk to her about all my fears. This type of situation really shows you who you friends are
- D So, in my view, although you may have lots of friends to have fun with, make sure you have at least one close friend who can support you when you need it most.

Writing Guide

There is a saying 'Age is no barrier to friendship.' Write an essay in which you give your opinion of this view, taking into consideration the generation gap and different life experience.

- 6 Read the task above. Make some notes for your opinion and personal description.
- 7 Write your essay.

C						

Have you ...

structured your essay with paragraphs?

covered and linked the required elements?
included a variety of structures?

2

3

Review Unit 5

Vocabulary

Complete the sentences with a verb phrase containing the word in brackets.	A person's eye colour depends on their g He wrote an important p that was published the properties of the				
1 IOliver. He hasn't got any friends. (sorry) 2 I my new neighbour. I don't trust him. (wary) 3 Sarah and I seem to be arguing a lot. We don't on several things. (eye) 4 Poppy's my best friend because we have	in a medical journal. 3 She was lucky that none of her internal o were damaged in the accident. 4 In the animal world, one parent usually stays with the owhile the other searches for food. 5 Scientists have formulated a theory, but as yet they have no p				
(common) 5 We have similar ideas. We (wavelength)	Mark: /5				
6 Matt adores his elder brother. He really	5 Match the sentence halves.				
him. (looks) Mark: /6 Complete the sentences with the words below. complimented flattered lectured nagged	1 He appears 2 It looks as 3 Judging by 4 Nothing a certain, but I think he's a vet. b to be selling something. c her face, I'd say she was upset. d if she's enjoying herself.				
offended teased	5 I can't be e springs immediately to mind.				
1 My mum me all weekend about my room. She kept on telling me that I should tidy it.	Mark: /5				
2 You really me when you said that I'd put on weight. I was quite upset.	Grammar				
My host family me on my English. They said	6 Rewrite the sentences using inversion.				
it was excellent.	1 I've never been so embarrassed in my life.				
4 Anna's brother her about her new haircut. He said it made her look like a boy. 5 You only me because you wanted	2 You shouldn't leave the resort under any circumstances.				
something. You don't usually say anything nice. 6 My dad me for an hour about my exam	3 There won't be another delivery until next week.				
results. He went on and on about 'responsibility'. Mark: /6	Tran into an old friend as soon as I left my house. They didn't consider splitting up at any time.				
	They didn't consider spitting up at any time.				
ord Skills	6 We hadn't seen such poverty anywhere before.				
Rewrite the sentences with the phrasal verbs below.					
bring up get over put down turn down turn up	Mark: /6				
1 We waited, but John didn't arrive.	7 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Write five words in each sentence.				
2 I didn't want to mention it.	(Contractions count as two words.)				
You're always making me feel stupid.	The plate was very hot, but I didn't drop it. I managed although it was				
4 Kate was upset, but she'll recover.	very hot. 2 Oscar had been offered a job, so he opted out of going to				
They offered me a job, but I rejected it.	university. Oscar chose because he had been offered a job.				
Mark: /5	3 Living in the country, I don't usually hear very much traffic. I'm used to because I live in the country.				

4 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

5

Review Unit 5

4	I thought your sister took her driving test last week.
	her driving test last week?
5	I think we should go home now.
	now?

Mark:

8 Choose the correct answers (a–c).

An unusual relationship

One of ¹__ strangest friendships in literature occurs in ²__ story by E.B. White called *Charlotte's Web*.

3 story is set on a farm in 4 USA, where Charlotte – a spider – makes friends with a pig named Wilbur and helps to save his life. Although *Charlotte's Web* was written for 5 children, it is popular with both young and adult readers all over 6 world, and it has sold over 45 million copies in 23 different languages.

1 a a	b the	c no article
2 a a	b the	c no article
3 a A	b The	c no article
4 a a	b the	c no article
5 a a	b the	c no article
6 a a	b the	c no article
		Mark: /

9 Choose the correct words to complete the text.

Man's best friend

There have been 'a lot / many dogs who have saved their owners, but 'no / none of them braver than a golden retriever named Figo. Figo isn't a pet; he's a guide dog for the blind. He has had 'several / much different owners, and he's helped 'every / all of them get around safely outside. On Monday, he was crossing the road with his current owner, Audrey Stone, when a bus didn't stop at the crossing. Figo jumped up at the bus to protect Audrey, who ended up injured, but alive. Figo needed an operation because he had hurt his leg and paw. Luckily, there were 'few / a few passengers on the bus at the time: only two schoolchildren. 'Either / Neither of them were injured.



Use of English

10 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in brackets. Use up to six words, including the words in brackets, and do not change the order of the words.

-	rackets, and do not change the order of the words.						
1	1	(not / feel / close) my brother since					
	he got married.						
2	My friends	(talk / into / play) for thei					

(put / off / eat) meat for life.

5 Not until everyone had taken their seats in the theatre

______(play / begin).
6 Hardly ______(reach / platform) when my train arrived.

7 ______ (not / we / meet) somewhere before? 8 Ryan _____ (try / not / think) his

ex-girlfriend, but sometimes he finds it impossible.

9 I don't mind watching this film again because

_____ (none / my friends / see) it.

10 The comedian was hilarious. We ____

Mark:	/10
Total:	160

I can ...

Read the statements. Think about your progress and tick one of the boxes.

 \star = I need more practice. $\star \star \star$ = No problem!

* = I sometimes find this difficult.

(laugh / every) his jokes.

	*	**	***
I can talk about relationships and describe behaviour.			
I can use negative structures.			
I can understand a discussion about sibling rivalry.			
I can use articles and quantifiers.			
I can use phrasal verbs.			
I can understand an article that talks about science and experiments.			
I can describe and compare photos and give opinions about friendship.			
I can write an opinion essay on the topic of friendship.			



Health

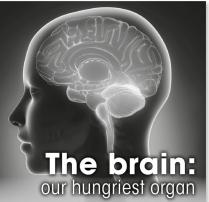
Vocabulary



Food science

I can talk about nutrition and health.

1 Choose the correct words to complete the text.



Our brains account for 2% of our weight, but ¹reduce / consume 20% of the energy that our bodies ²produce / digest after eating. When we sleep, our brains continue to ³burn / produce energy because they are still working. They ²process / burn all the day's activities and create memories. The brain also repairs itself, but if we don't sleep enough, it ³reduces / burns the time that our brains have for this work. Having fewer hours of sleep also affects our diets, as it is more difficult for our brains to °control / process our weight if we don't sleep enough. If we want to 'consume / boost our brains' energy levels, we should do exercise. Exercise pumps blood full of oxygen to our brains.

2	Match the verbs below with the definitions. There is o	ne
	extra verb.	

ache boost consume control digest process produce reduce

- 1 to use fuel, energy, or time, especially in large amounts
- 2 to make something smaller in size, importance, amount, etc. _____
- 3 to make something
- 4 to improve or increase something
- 5 to change food in your stomach into substances that your body can use
- 6 the feeling you get in your muscles when you've done a lot of exercise
- 7 to order, limit, or rule something ____

		sentences

	Jaajages, si	cca mann ana	bacon can be casey, bar	
	p	m	is not very good	for you.
2	You should a			
	f	such as pr	e-cooked meals.	
3	D	p	like milk and che	ese are
	important for their bones.	or growing ch	ildren because they stre	engthen
4	It's much be	tter to eat bro	own bread made from	
	W	g	flour rather than	1
	processed w			
5	Some p	fari	mers keep turkeys and o	ducks
	as well as ch	ickens.		
			nist giving advice abou ort. Tick the things he r	
1	calcium		7 minerals	
2	calories		8 nutrients	
3	carbohydrat	es 🗌	9 preservatives	
4	cholesterol		10 protein	

5 Q2.02 Listen again and complete the advice with the words you ticked in exercise 4.

to make it tastier!

* You don't have to eat broccoli, which is full of

* Sweet potatoes and tomatoes contain a lot of

11 vitamins

_, with oil and salt, but it might help

5 fat

6 fibre

k	You should try and avoid red meat because although it has 3 , it also has a lot of 4
k	You must eat fruit – bananas are a good option because they have a lot of 5
k	You mustn't eat too many nuts because although they provide you with 6 , they also contain a lot of 7
k	If you have to exercise in the evening, milk will help you relax and provide your bones with

The passive

I can identify and use different forms of the passive.

1 Choose the correct options (a-c) to complete the text.

Most of us take antibiotics for granted. They 1__ to treat many illnesses caused by bacteria, and until now, patients 2__ them successfully to prevent infection following minor surgery and routine operations. Now, though, the public 3__ that some bacteria are becoming resistant to antibiotics, and unless action 4_ soon, we could be 'back to the dark ages' when people by common illnesses on a regular basis. Experts explain that in a large group of bacteria, there may be some which 6__ by antibiotics; when these bacteria survive and reproduce, they increase the number of resistant bacteria to dangerous levels. Now scientists are raising concerns about a possible outbreak of a resistant infection. They predict that two in every five people who are affected by a resistant infection 7



1	а	were used	b	are used	c	had been us
2	a	have been given	b	are being given	c	will be given
3	а	were being warned	b	are warned	c	are being
						warned
4	a	will be taken	b	is taken	c	has been
						taken
5	a	were killed	b	had been killed	c	have been
						killed
6	a	are destroyed	b	aren't	c	weren't
				destroyed		destroyed
7	а	have been killed	b	are killed	c	will be killed

the

2		omplete the sentences erbs in brackets.	with the correct pa	ssive form of the
	1	Antibiotics	- "	doctors to fight
		disease for many years.		
	2	What would our lives b	e like if X-ray machir	ies
		(not	invent)?	
	3	Scientists believe that a	a vaccine to prevent	malaria
		(deve	elop) soon.	
	4	In the past, many patie	nts	_ (infect) each
		year in dirty hospitals.		
	5	Natural plant remedies	for illnesses	
		(discover) all the time.		

6 Anaesthetics

the 19th century.

3	Rewrite each sentence in two ways, using the underline
	words as the subjects and leaving out the agent.

- 1 The teacher gave each student a book. Each student was given a book. A book was given to each student.
- 2 They have offered both of us a place at university.
- 3 Mum cooked me a special dinner last night.
- 4 She's lending the money to Anna.
- 5 My best friend has just sent me a text message.
- 6 Do you think they'll give him the job?

bite cause give improve know raise

4 Complete the text with the correct passive form of the verbs below.

Louis Pasteur 1	as the scientist who
proved 'germ theo	ry' after he discovered that many
llnesses 2	by tiny organisms. He
	in France, and it was there that
turned sour; Paster destroyed the harr	scientist to investigate why their wine ar discovered that heating the wine nful bacteria which made the wine go d on human medicine. A woman took because the boy ⁴
first-known attemp a person ⁵ weak germ, so tha the disease. Medic	from rabies; Pasteur cured him in the ot at vaccination, a process in which a small amount of a dead or they produce antibodies that fight tine 6 hugely thanks ination prevents millions of deaths
every year.	•

5 Complete the second sentence using the correct passive tense so that it means the same as the first.

- 1	I definitely didn't break the laptop.	
	The laptop	
2	Has someone invited Jan to the cinema?	
	Has	to the cinem

- 3 They hadn't told us about the school trip. the school trip. We
- 4 Our teacher will explain the answers next week. The answers our teacher next week.
- 5 They were showing students around the museum. around the museum.
- 6 The government is advising people not to travel there. People. travel there.

(not use) in operations until

6C

Listening

Keeping fit

I can listen to and understand people talking about exercise.



R	evi	sion: Stu	ident's	Book	page 67		
1		omplete t ords belo		tences	with the	correct for	m of the
		drenalin gh-intens			convert	energy	
	1				-	dy that you ca	
		Running you to _				, which	helps
	3	The mos			y to get fi	t is by doing	short
	4	If you ex				your heart	

2	Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb
	below.

at	tend	be	beat	do	go	keep	lift	pedal	play	push
1	1 play to win – quite competitive and I'm								m	
	never	hap	pier tha	n wh	nen l'	ve		an	oppon	ent.
2	Ineve	r			runn	ing alor	ne aft	er dark.		
3	Lenjo	y			fit. It	makes	me fe	el healt	hy.	
4	I train	hard	d and a	lway:	5		n	nyself to	the lin	nit.
5	My da	d re	gularly			W	eight:	in the	gym, b	ut he
	hurt h	nis ba	ack last	wee	k.					
6	My m	um_			_ a l	ot of fit	ness	classes a	at the I	ocal
	gym,	but s	he like	5		a	erobi	cs most	of all.	
7	My br	othe	r			on an e	xercis	e bike ir	his	
	bedro	om.	He say	s it's	safer	than g	oing o	outside!		
Q	Hedo	esn'	teniov			fo	othal	I He pre	fers	

Listening Strategy

Remember that the information in the task may be expressed in a different way in the text.

- 3 2.03 Read the Listening Strategy. Then read the sentences and listen to five speakers. What words did the speakers actually use to express these things?
 - 1 Speaker 1 dislikes exercising.
 - Speaker 2 wonders why his chosen sport is unpopular with his peers.
 - 3 Speaker 3 talks about the body's preferred form of exercise.
 - 4 Speaker 4 describes her family's favourite pastime.
 - 5 Speaker 5 explains how what we eat is converted into fuel for the body.
- 4 Q2.04 Listen to four texts where people talk about their preferred form of exercising. Choose the correct answers (a-c).

Text 1

- These speakers explain
 - a how their favourite activity doesn't involve teamwork.
 - b that they don't like the gym or sports.
 - c what it takes to succeed in their favourite activity.

Text 2

- 2 This speaker's intention is to
 - a detail his sport's training regime.
 - $\boldsymbol{b}\ \ \text{explain}$ why the sport's rules are important.
 - c warn that his sport is very dangerous.

Text 3

- 3 This speaker is explaining
 - $\boldsymbol{a}\$ the effects of exercise on the various muscle groups.
 - **b** how exercise also affects the mind.
 - c that exercise must be regular to be beneficial.

Text 4

- 4 This speaker talks about
 - a how much he enjoys training with his father.
 - b why his father is paying for his training.
 - c how difficult the training is for a triathlon.

swimming and running.



Grammar

the modal verbs and verbs in brackets.

The passive: advanced structures I can use advanced passive structures.

1 Complete the passive sentences with the correct form of

	1 It isn't true that sleepwalkers wake) safely.	(can't /	1 We know that too much sugar is bad for us. It is
	2 It seems that more research into the ne	w drug	Too much sugar
	(ought to / do) before		2 They estimate that a third of babies born in the UK in 201:
	available.		have a life expectancy of 100.
	3 Surely the results of the tests	(must /	It is
	check) before they were published?		Athird
	4 Our sleep (can / distu	rb) by artificial	3 They say that vitamin C is good for colds.
	lighting.		It is
	5 Perhaps not all health myths	(should /	Vitamin C
	dismiss) completely.		4 People once thought that carrots were good for your
	6 We (might / lie) to for		eyesight.
	drinks industry about how much water	we need.	It was once
	7 Some health advice(may /	Carrots were once
	misunderstand) in the past.		5 People believe that the ancient Egyptians were great
	8 Do you think most smokers		doctors.
	encourage) to quit by using e-cigarettes	?	It is
2	Complete the text with the correct passi	ve infinitive or -ina	
	form of the verb in brackets.		6 They say that the actor put on ten kilos for this film.
			It is
	Imagine 1 (wake up) by a family to discover that you have not only got turned on your computer while asleep, but your friends without knowing it. Apparently, "zzz-mailing" are starting 2 (tell) about even more of events. Robert Wood, who suffers from bize wanderings, desperately hopes 4 after his wife, who didn't expect 5 by such a worrying sight, found the Scottist chips in their kitchen while fast asleep! How sufferer, nurse Lee Hadwin, definitely does (grevent) from sleepwal 7 (amaze) by his unconsof. He certainly deserves 8 (karitist after producing amazing drawings or clothes and walls – although it seems he holility while he's awake.	of out of bed and have emailed , cases of _ (report) set of these strange arre night-time _ (cure) _ (meet) a chef cooking vever, another n't want king and admits ious talents! _ now) as a gifted 1 tablecloths,	The actor 4 Complete the text with one word in each gap. Do you hate ¹ told that you should be drinking more water? ² is often reported that we ought to drink at least two litres a day, but there are many people who believe this advice must have ³ spread by companies wanting us to buy their bottled water. Humans are known to ⁴ evolved in conditions of extreme heat and dryness and it ⁵ now thought that too much water is worse for us than too little. According to one scientist, it's like saying we should all ⁵ encouraged to breathe
	Lee Hadwin with one of his night time drawings		more oxygen, because if a little is good for us, more must be even better!

I Watters.com

3 Rewrite the sentences in two ways using passive

structures. Begin with the words given.

6E

Word Skills

Match the sentence halves.
 It was such a far We're taking a much My uncle used to be a highly
 She's so single Your actions could have far The film is a light Being absent She made a half-

mountain.

nowadays.

I visited Thailand.

5 If you don't like ______ recommend this breed.

are so expensive.

2 If Zoe's as _____ really beautiful!

experience!

6 Despite all the _____ seem to be busy!

Compound adjectives

I can use compound adjectives.

2 This phone is considered very _____-fashioned

3 I'd never eaten such _____-watering dishes before

4 Last night's TV fashion documentary was informative and

7 Most people own _____-hand cars as new ones

3 Isn't that man sitting opposite a _____ (know)

7 I'm always ______ (eye) until I've had some coffee.

This job's only suitable for people from (speak) countries such as the UK or Australia.
 Japan is a very ____ (populated) country.
 Travelling into space must be a _____ (blow)

3 Complete the sentences with a compound adjective formed from the word in brackets.
 1 It may be an interesting article, but it's not very

-spirited dogs, I don't

-saving devices I own, I always

(look) as her sister, she must be

_-provoking.

					1		
					23 3/		
					Mill	100	
			e surprising, but	7		H	NA COM
ab th in dr ne do	e b ter ear	t d scie orai est so mir wa	reams, but little a entists think that in to clear its 'har ded in the meanin me people are sa ng. There is much ake up ' from a bur dreams as so	dred d d d d d d d d d d d d d d d d d d	e dream. There are pli eement about their re eams allow a 4 opp isk' while we sleep. Out of dreams, and althou to have predicted the at is 6 about drear ood night's sleep, wh as you wake up? Bec forgotten before you	Our Oth Jugh Jugh Jugh Jugh Jugh Jugh Jugh Jug	pose. Many tunity for ners are more n it may seem uture while so when you not try writing use apparently,
4	Cl	100	ose the correct o	oti	ons (a–c) to complet	e t	he text above.
	1 2 3 4 5 6	a a a a	single-minded well-known mind-blowing time-saving far-fetched upcoming light-hearted	b b b b b	straightforward good-looking	c c c c	far-reaching well-written badly paid much-needed high-spirited
Not all compound adjectives, especially those formed from adverb + past participle, appear in a dictionary because they are formed from other words. You should be able to work out the meaning of most of them from the words which form them. For example, a highly paid person is someone who is paid a lot of money. Read the Vocab boost! box. Then complete the second part of each sentence with an explanation. Try not to repeat the words from the compound adjective. A short-sighted person is someone A cold-blooded animal is an animal							
	2	Λ.	last-minute decis	ior	s is a desision		·
					-		,
	4	A	world-famous to	uri	st attraction is one _		
	5	A	well-behaved chi	ld i	s a child	_	
	6	A	deeply rooted tra	dit	ion is a tradition		

7 An open-minded person is someone _

Reading

Future food

I can understand a text about insects as food.

Revision: Student's Book page 70

Complete the text with the words below.

amounts diet dishes flavours leftovers menu portion slice

easy if you love all types of	but it isn't of food like I do. However, I've to eating my favourite meals,
I'll just eat smaller 2	of them. That means
that I'll eat a 3	of pizza and not a whole
one, and I'll just have one	4 of takeaway
Chinese food instead of to	wo. At least that means there
won't be any 5	filling up the fridge!
And when I eat out at a r	estaurant, I'll choose the
meals on the 6	that include salads and
healthy food. The probler	n is that I like food with
strong 7 an	d tastes, so I'm going to find
8 full of lett	uce a bit tasteless!

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

- 1 What reasons are used to support an insect-based diet?
- 2 How are supporters of insects as food trying to persuade Americans to eat them?

Reading Strategy

When you do a gapped sentence task, look for clues before and after each gap. For example, if a sentence starts with And or Furthermore, it probably introduces additional information.

Other words can be used for

- · contrast: But. However
- · consequences or conclusions: So, Therefore

3 Read the Reading Strategy. Then read the text again. Match sentences A-E with gaps 1-4. There is one extra sentence.

- A Today, 50% of the same universities promote insects as food.
- B The popularity of Mexican food in the USA is also helping. as companies such as Don Bugito offer traditional Mexican insect dishes.
- C Moreover, the amount of land needed to produce enough insects to feed the whole country is much smaller than the land needed to produce meat.
- D But will it be enough?
- E However, in parts of Asia, Africa and Central America, where there are plenty of big, juicy insects all year round, they are considered a delicious staple.



THE INSECTS ARE COMING!

With an abundance of cheap food and a weakness for junk food, the dietary habits of many Americans (and people in other Western countries) have led to an obesity epidemic. As a result, a growing number of food experts are saying it's time to replace traditional dishes with more nutritious and also more economical and ecological dishes: dishes that contain insects.

If you put a plate of bugs (as insects are often called in the USA) in front of an American, they, like most Westerners, would probably refuse to eat them. Insects are seen as pests that destroy food crops rather than delicacies to be eaten. 1__ The challenge for the promoters of insect-based meals is to make Americans see them in the same way.

During the 20th century, if you had visited a research department at an American food and agricultural university, you would have heard about how they were trying to reduce insect numbers due to the negative impact they have on crops and seeds. 2___ Furthermore, insect fairs such as the BugFest at the North Carolina Museum or The Great Insect Fair at Penn State University explain that grasshoppers, moths and their cousins are an excellent source of nutrients like protein, minerals and vitamins. The fairs also offer the more adventurous visitors 'bug banquets', which serve mouthwatering insect dishes.

Apart from the scientific community, a growing number of market stalls and restaurants are providing insect meals too. 3__ What is more, fans of insect-based cooking like Daniella Martin are spreading the word that bugs are good for you, Martin's blog Girl Meets Bug. her internet cooking videos and her newspaper columns are all contributing to changing Americans' perceptions of insects. 4__ While entomophagists (people who eat insects) agree they face an uphill struggle, with 70 million obese citizens and millions more who want to be environmentally friendly, it seems that this could be the right time for insects to invade America's kitchens.



Speaking

Role-play

I can role-play a conversation at the doctor's.

c X-ray

Revision: Student's Book page 72

Match the illnesses and injuries with the treatments.

- 2 chest infection
- 1 virus a antibiotics b throat sweets / painkillers
- 3 heartburn
- 4 sore throat
- 5 sprain
- 6 fracture 7 cut 8 bee sting
- d antacids
- e antiseptic cream
- f bandage / anti-inflammatories
- g antihistamine
- h rest and lots of liquids

Speaking Strategy

Do not get nervous if you're unsure whether you've understood the question or what the other person has said. Simply ask the person for clarification.

2 Read the Speaking Strategy and complete the sentences with the phrases below.

could repeat that? like ...? mean by ...? quite catch that. same as ...? saying that again?

- 1 Sorry, do you think you _
- 2 I'm afraid I didn't
- 3 Would you mind
- 4 What do you
- 5 Is that something
- 6 Is that the
- 3 2.05 Listen to a student doing the task below. Which two sentences from exercise 2 did the student use?

While on holiday in the UK, you go and see the doctor because you have hurt your ankle. Have a conversation with him/her and discuss the following points:

- · the injury
- · how you did it
- · X-ray and treatment
- · a follow-up visit

F-262			
		DEMAJ	
eleg Haith	e ELTSMatte		

4	2.05	Listen again. Make notes on the following topics.
	The injury	

How the person did it

Treatment

What the student needed clarification on

While on holiday in the UK, you suffer from a bad, itchy rash and go and see the doctor. Have a conversation with him/her and discuss the following points:

- · when it appeared
- · the possible causes
- treatment

Follow-up visit

- · a follow-up visit
- 5 Read the task. Prepare notes in answer to what the doctor will say. Ask for clarification on one of the questions. Try to give extra detail in your answers.
 - 1 What seems to be the matter?
 - 2 When did the rash appear?
 - 3 What do you think might have caused it?
 - 4 Do you have any allergies?
 - 5 Well, I'm not sure. I'm going to write you a prescription for some antihistamine tablets and cream.
 - 6 If it's still bothering you, or if you feel poorly, come back in a few days.
- 6 Now do the task using your notes from exercise 5.



Writing

An article

I can write an article for a school website.

Preparation

You've read a report about a decline in PE lessons for young people during school hours, especially during exam time. Write an article for your school website about the benefits of teenagers taking regular exercise at this time, and how students could incorporate more of it into their lives.

- 1 Read the task above. Identify the elements that need to be included in the article. How many paragraphs do you think it should have? Read the article and check.
- 2 Find four comment adverbs in the article. Write down four more comment adverbs.

Writing	Strategy

Organise your ideas or opinions into a coherent argument by using linking words or phrases, for example: *therefore*, *although*, *furthermore*, *as a result*.

- 3 Read the Writing Strategy. Find and underline six different conjunctions in the article (excluding and, as and when).
- 4 Link the sentences using the words below.
 - although moreover since so therefore whereas
 - 1 She runs regularly. She's very fit.
 - 2 He doesn't like exercising much. He still does it.
 - 3 Exercise increases your muscle strength. It improves your brain power.
 - 4 He has a lot of fizzy drinks. His teeth aren't good.
 - 5 Sweets are unhealthy. Fruit is good for you.
 - 6 We've been exercising. We've lost weight.

Writing Guide

You've read an article about the increase in childhood obesity through poor diet and lack of exercise. Write an article for your school website about the risks associated with obesity and propose ways of persuading young people to make good lifestyle choices.

5	Read the task above and make notes on your ideas for each
	paragraph. Choose a title. Plan your article.

r ar agrapii i	
Paragraph 2	
Paragraph 3	
Davaguanh 4	



KEEP ON MOVING!

It is said that due to academic pressures, many older students in Britain do not have the time in their school schedules for more than two hours of PE a week. Surely this is not enough for young people to maintain healthy lifestyles?

Obviously, students see studying for exams as their overriding priority, as it is vital for good grades and future careers. However, it is simply not healthy for students to spend all their time at their desks. Interestingly, research has shown that regular exercise boosts concentration, reduces stress and aids restful sleep. Consequently, it would appear that exercise is highly important when it comes to successful studying. Therefore, if the school is unable to include enough exercise in students' school timetables, the students should take responsibility for it themselves.

Naturally, I think there are other ways for students to ensure they get enough exercise, for example by walking or cycling to school. Moreover, after-school clubs offer various types of exercise. So too do local leisure centres. It is merely a question of having the will power to organise exercise and stick to it. Once students feel the benefit of regular exercise, it is easier for them to maintain it.

Personally, I think it is extremely important that young people realise that continuing exercise during periods of intense study can help them achieve higher grades. So, let's make a move today!

6 Write your article.

	CHECK YOUR WORK	
0	Have you	
1	organised your ideas into paragraphs?	
	used conjunctions to link your ideas in each paragraph?	
	included one or two comment adverbs?	

Review Unit 6

Vocabulary

_	
Complete the sentences with the words below. calories carbohydrates dairy products minerals preservatives pulses 1 People burn when they do exercise. 2 Nuts, eggs and are good sources of protein. 3 can be found in bread, rice, pasta and potatoes. 4 contain calcium, which makes teeth and bones stronger. 5 Processed food contains so that it doesn't go off. 6 Salt is one of the most common found in food, but there are many others.	3 Complete the sentences with compound adjectives former from the words in brackets. 1 The film was more than a little It was completely unbelievable! (fetch) 2 I've just read a rather article. I'll send it to you, if you like. (provoke) 3 Max is still a bit because he's only just got up. (eye) 4 The size of the new stadium is It's absolutely huge! (blow) 5 Once again, Usain Bolt has given another performance in the 100 metres. (break) 6 There are so many desserts on the menu. I don't know which one to choose! (water)
Match the verbs in A with the words in B to make collocations. Then complete the sentences. A be beat convert keep lift pedal play push an opponent a team sport competitive fit food into energy on a bike weights yourself to the limit 1 lfyou want to	4 Match the words below with the definitions (1–6). diet dish flavour leftovers portion slice 1 Food that remains at the end of a meal. 2 How food or drink tastes. 3 A thin piece of food that is cut off a larger portion. 4 Food served as part of a meal. 5 The food that you eat and drink regularly. 6 An amount of food that is given to one person. Mark: / 5 Choose the correct answers (a–c). 1 The doctor says I've got a throat infection, so he's prescribing a antibiotics b antihistamines c antiseptic creams 2 Why don't you take if you've got heartburn? a a painkiller b an antacid c an anti-inflammatory 3 The best thing for itchy insect stings is a antibiotics b painkillers c antibiotics 5 Alex is taking to stop his fractured leg from hurting so
	much. a painkillers b antihistamines c antacids

Word Skills

6

Review Unit 6

5 Complete the sentences asking for clarification.	Use of English
1 Would you saying that again?	
2 Is that something lasagne?	9 Complete the text with the correct form of the words in brackets.
3 What do you by 'far-reaching'?	Diackets.
4 I'm afraid I didn't quite that.	Should I exercise when I'm sick?
5 Is that the same wholegrain?	It's a question that occurs to many athletes faced
6 Sorry, do you think you could that, please?	with a major competition. You've worked your training
Mark: / 6	programme up to the 1 (intense) required
Mark. 70	and then you suddenly wake up 2(feel) ill.
	If it's a simple cold, it's fine to train for a short period
Grammar	at a much slower pace. However, if you're more
Rewrite the sentences in the passive. Do not include the	(congest) than that, even the most [mind] athlete should not contemplate
agent.	doing exercise. Training while sick can have 5
Someone has stolen my mountain bike.	(reach) consequences and there's a logical explanation for
1 Someone has stolen my mountain bike.	this. During an 6 (infect), the body modifies
3 Thousan huilding a new sports centre	its behaviour. Your body makes substances to fight the
2 They are building a new sports centre.	attack. Muscle protein, instead of fat, is 7
2 The West and the second second	(break) down for energy. At this point, there's a greater
3 They'll postpone the race if it rains.	risk of 8(injure) if you try to continue your
4 Theoretical according to	training regime. It may take a few weeks to recover
4 They had cancelled our flight.	your ⁹ (fit), but this is a small price to pay compared to suffering a serious injury.
F The Teacher death of the Control of	_ compared to suitening a serious injury.
5 They're going to close the swimming pool.	Mark: ,
C The	
6 They cut the grass every week.	Total: /
Mark: /6	5 I can
3 D 16 16 16 17 17 17 17 17 17 17 17 17 17 17 17 17	Read the statements. Think about your progress and tick one
Rewrite the sentences in two different ways using passive structures. Begin with the words given.	of the boxes.
	\star = I need more practice. $\star \star \star$ = No problem!
 People think the new coach is a woman. 	
It	★★ = I sometimes find this difficult.
<u> </u>	* * ** **
The new coach	I can talk about nutrition and health.
	. I can identify and use different forms of
We believe the manager resigned last night	the passive.
It	I can listen to and understand people
	talking about exercise.
The manager	I can use advanced passive structures.
3 They say the rules are straightforward.	I can use compound adjectives.
It	I can react to an article about food
	. addictions.
The rules	I can role-play a conversation at the
	. doctor's.
4 The press reports that some athletes have made a	I can write an article for a school
complaint.	website.
lt	

Mark:

Exam Skills Trainer

Reading

Strategy

Remember the paragraphs may not always match the same number of questions in a multiple matching task. Always read the instructions carefully to check what you have to do.

1 Read the Strategy. Then read the question and the text below. How many statements does the paragraph match? Which statements are they?

The activity the author mentions

- 1 requires more effort than you think.
- 2 makes you ache all over.
- 3 is much easier than people think.
- 4 helps avoid getting hurt while exercising

Boxing yoga, as it sounds, is a kind of yoga based on the movements used in boxing. It's supposed to strengthen, condition and stretch the whole body, as well as prevent sporting injuries. Some gyms have free boxing yoga classes, while others charge per session, but there's also a video you can pay to download. It's a pretty strenuous form of exercise, considering it's yoga, but it makes you feel relaxed and energetic afterwards.

2 Read the text and questions 1–6 below. Match the correct question with each part of the text (A–C). You can match each part with more than one question.

In which paragraph does the author mention an activity which ...

- 1 has become extremely popular recently? __
- 2 requires you to do two things at once? __
- 3 has made an existing form of exercise more extreme? _
- 4 gives the wrong impression to the observer? ___
- 5 tires you out after a very short time? ___
- 6 can be particularly painful? ___

The latest fitness trends

A Reformer Pilates is a much more intense form of Pilates. It involves doing the same sort of pushing and stretching exercises, but on equipment resembling a rowing machine. It isn't the kind of thing you'd have at home, so you have to go a special Pilates centre to try it. If you do, bear in mind that you won't be able to walk up or down stairs for a few days afterwards. At first, it looks quite easy, but towards the end of the session, your thiabs will be crying out for mercy.

B Jumping up and down on a trampoline is a lot of fun, but it can make a great workout too. You'd be surprised by how exhausted you are after only a few minutes bouncing. Not only is it better for the heart than running, but it also increases co-ordination and helps reduce stress levels. Trampolining is taking off in a big way, and some new centres have as many as 150 trampolines. You can either have a go at 'freejumping' – without an instructor – or pay someone to teach you how to do it properly.

C If you're usually quite active, but you're feeling down in the dumps, then you might like to try Dynamic Running Therapy going out for a run with a therapist. The sessions are quite pricey as the therapists are professionals and they charge a bit more than the going rate. It's easier to do both activities when you're running and talking at the same time; you run further because you don't notice your sore feet, and you talk more freely than you would in the therapist's Office.

Listening

Strategy

Most of the questions in a multiple-choice task will ask you to find specific information. However, you may also be asked to identify the main idea or the context of the text.

- 3 Read the Strategy. Then read the questions in exercise 4. Which one does not ask you to find specific information? Is this question related to the context or the main idea?
- 4 2.06 You will hear an interview with Dr Marilyn Shepherd about food safety. Answer questions 1–5. Choose the correct answer, A, B, C, or D.
 - ${\bf 1} \ \ \mbox{In order to minimise the risk from raw chicken,}$
 - Dr Shepherd recommends

 A maintaining it at a constant temperature until using it.
 - B handling it with clean hands and utensils.
 - C keeping it wrapped and placing it in the fridge.

 D checking that it contains no bacteria before cooking it.
 - 2 Dr Shepherd suggests that the best way to find out if chicken is cooked properly is
 - A to check that the juices are pink when you cut it.
 - B to test the part where the meat is the deepest.
 - C to cut a piece from one end and taste it.
 - D to use a food thermometer to ensure it has reached 70°C.
 - 3 Dr Shepherd explains that beef is different from other kinds of meat because
 - A bacteria tend to stay on the surface.
 - B it mustn't be cooked right through to the middle.
 - C it doesn't contain any harmful bacteria.
 - D the guidelines on handling it are stricter.
 - 4 Microwaves are effective at killing bacteria
 - A in food which hasn't been put in the fridge.

 B in all kinds of food except rice.
 - C in food that was originally heated to 74°C.
 D in food that has been heated up evenly.
 - 5 What might be the title of Dr Shepherd's talk?
 - A How to tell if food has gone off
 - B How to treat food poisoning
 - C How to take care of what you eat
 - D How to organise your fridge

Exam Skills Trainer

Use of English

Strategy

An open cloze task often tests both grammar and vocabulary. The gaps testing grammar usually focus on function words, and can sometimes be completed with a form of the verb be, used as an auxiliary verb or a linking verb.

- 5 Read the Strategy. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb be. Why is this form used in each case?
 - 1 Rice eaten all over the word, especially in Asia.
 - still having dinner when we popped 2 They_ round to see them.
 - 3 I've __ thinking about becoming a vegetarian.
 - 4 You'll hungry if you don't have any breakfast. 5 Stop so stubborn and let me help you.
- 6 Read the text and complete the gaps. Use one word only in each gap.

The truth about superfoods

The term 'superfood' refers to a food that is an especially rich source of a particular nutrient, such as a vitamin or a mineral. Thanks to ambiguous reports in the media, the general public led to believe that these foods contain has 1 large amounts of all the nutrients. While most fruit and vegetables are high in nutrients, the truth is that there are foods that contain all of the vitamins and minerals the body requires daily. In fact, the idea that people only be eating certain superfoods can lead to other important food groups 4 Neither is a diet based on superfoods necessarily a balanced diet. Avocados, for example, contain a number of important nutrients, but they are extremely high in calories. no circumstances should they be eaten too often. On the other 6______, pomegranates provide the same kind of nutrients, but they have a much lower profile avocados. 8 the whole, it is better not to trust food companies' claims that a food is a superfood, and to do your own research into the food instead.

Speaking

Strategy

Try to use varied and advanced language where possible when describing a photo, e.g. modal verbs in present (they can't be on a diet, he might be learning) and in the past (she must have left), continuous infinitives (they seem to be working). This will help you gain more points for variety.

7 Read the Strategy. Then rewrite the sentences.

- 1 It's possible the man is the boy's grandfather. The man may
- 2 I'm pretty sure they've just been shopping. They must
- 3 I think they're having a good time. They appear to
- 8 Look at the two photos below that show different people preparing food. Compare the photos using the points below.
 - · who is preparing the food
 - · what food is being prepared
 - where it is being prepared
 - who is probably going to eat it





Writing

Strategy

If your article is meant for young readers, its style does not need to be too formal. Keep your introduction short and punchy. Use interesting facts and rhetorical questions to grab the reader's attention.

9 Read the strategy. Then choose the best alternatives to complete the text below.

Hungry brains

'It's well established that / Did you know that the brain is an energy-hungry organ? Despite being relatively small, it uses more than 20% of our daily energy intake. 2In my opinion, / That's why it needs calories to function well. 3Can we still feed our brains / Will it be good or bad for us if schools stop selling high-energy foods in vending machines?

10 Read the task below and write your article.

You see this notice in an international English-language magazine for teenagers.

ARTICLES WANTED!

We're looking for articles about cooking disasters. Have you or a member of your family ever had a cooking disaster? Tell us about it - describe the dish, and explain what went wrong. The best articles will be published in our next issue.

Tall stories

Vocabulary



Truth and lies

I can talk about telling the truth and lies.

1	Complete the text	with the correct	form of the verb	s below.
---	-------------------	------------------	------------------	----------

disguise exaggerate lie manipulate pass photoshop

You can't sa	y that adverts 1	about	products
to consumer	s, but I think it's true to	say they 2	
what produc	ets can do. Advertisers	try to 3	oui
emotions wit	h images of attractive	e people and	places.
Furthermore,	they have been know	vn to 4	
images so th	at products look bette	er than they r	eally are.
Often, food o	and drinks manufactu	rers 5	off
products wh	ich have too much su	igar as 'energ	y food'
and 6	the fact that so	ome products	contain
ingredients t	hat are not good for u	IS	



2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

cheat fabricate fib fool mislead swear

1 Sam was told to leave the exam because he was using his mobile phone and ______.

2 The children were ______ when they said that the dog ate the cake.

3 You have to ______ to tell the truth in a court of law.

- 3 You have to ______ to tell the truth in a court of la 4 That tattoo isn't real! She's just trying to _____ u
- 5 The thief claims that the police _____ the evidence against him.
- 6 Jack _____ his parents about what he had really been doing on Friday evening.

3 2.07 Listen to the dialogues and choose the correct answers (a–c).

Dialogue 1

- 1 What is Jessica doing at the beginning of the dialogue?
 - vitat is sessica doing at the beginning of the dialogue:
- a Making an excuse b Telling the truth c Cheating2 What does Tom want Jessica to do?
- a Deceive somebody
 - a Deceive somebody
 - b Lie about something to somebody
 - c Own up to something
- 3 What does Jessica find difficult to do?
 - b Tell the truth
- c Fool Tom

Dialogue 2

- 4 What is Grace doing?
 - a Photoshopping a picture
 - b Disguising her friend
- c Telling the truth5 What does Grace say she hasn't done?
 - a Improved the story
 - b Made the story more amusing
 - c Fabricated a story
- 6 What does Leo think a newspaper should do?
 - a Portray things as more interesting than they are
 - **b** Tell the truth
 - c Reveal secrets

4 Complete the sentences with the correct verbs.

- 1 A lot of people won't tell you anything face to face, but then r______ all their secrets on the internet.
- 2 Nicola I______ to me about the date of her party!
- 3 He always m excuses for his mistakes and never accepts responsibility for anything!
- 4 Alex o _____ up to breaking the window and promised to pay for a new one.
- 5 The machine d______ his voice so you didn't know who was speaking.

5 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 The newspapers gave a very biased / manipulative report and criticised the government.
- 2 It's so honest / hypocritical to tell people to help when you don't do anything yourself!
- 3 Andy is really manipulative / direct and tries to control everything so that it always favours him.
- 4 I like Sara's direct / ethical manner, even if she sometimes criticises what I have done.
- 5 There are new medical treatments such as gene therapy which raise ethical / dishonest issues.
- 6 I wanted to give Frank an open / honest answer, but I couldn't tell him his suit looked awful, could I?

6 Match the adjectives below with the descriptions.

devious fake hypocritical straight trustworthy truthful

- 1 Someone who is honest and says what they think. _
- 2 Someone who tricks others in order to get what they want
- 3 Something which is not genuine. ___
- 4 Someone who can be relied upon to do the right thing and to be honest.
- 5 Someone who says only what is true. _____
- 6 Someone who says one thing, but does another. ____

a Tell a lie

Reported speech I can report what people have said and asked.

1	Change the direct speech into reported speech.	4 Repo	ort the dialogue using say or ask in the past simple.
	1 'You must take these tablets twice a day.'		
	The doctor says I		
	2 'I'm going to the gym tomorrow.' Ben told me		LON
	3 'You don't have to wait for me.' Liz said that I		
	4 'I took my final exam yesterday.' Jack told me		
	5 'I haven't told you the complete truth.' Pablo said		
	6 'I'll meet you later today.'		
	Jim tells me		
	7 'I prefer this café to the one opposite.'		
	Julia says	Dan	Are you going to the concert tomorrow evening?
	8 'I'll always remember meeting you.'	Zoe	No, I'm not. I haven't got any money.
	Ann told me	Dan	I'll lend you some. How much do you need?
2	Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets. Do not change the order of the words. Use a	Zoe	That's really kind of you, but I have to finish my homework too.
	maximum of five words including the words in brackets.	Dan	Would you like me to help you finish it?
	1 Will asked us (time / game / start)	Zoe	Do you speak German?
	the next day.	Dan	No, I don't. Your cousin does, doesn't she?
	2 The assistant asked him if (he / like /	Zoe	Yes, she does. Perhaps I should ask her.
	try) on a smaller jacket.		,
	3 My teacher asked me (I / finish) the	_	
	exercise and I said I hadn't.		
	4 I asked Maria (which / film / seen)	-	
	the night before.		
	5 The dentist asked (me / why) never		
	used an electric toothbrush before.		
	6 She asked him if (he / going) the park		
	and he said he wasn't.		
	7 Lasked the policeman whether(he /	5 Writ	e a second sentence that has a similar meaning to the
	help / us) and he said he could.		. Use the words in brackets.
	help y asy and he said he codid.	1 'D	o you know the answer to these questions?' Sally asked
3	Change the direct speech into reported speech. Begin with <i>My mum asked me</i> .		e. (if)
	1 'Why are you home so late?'	2 'l r	mustn't be late for the trip tomorrow,' said Bella. (next)
	2 'Did you leave school on time today?'		ave you heard the band's new album yet?' asked Kosta
	3 'You've got lots of homework to do, haven't you?'		ne)
	4 'When are you going to tidy your room?'	4 'I \	won't be at school next week,' said Mark. (says)
	5 'Have you seen your brother this afternoon?'		/ill you be getting a new phone soon?' asked Harry. /hether)
	6 'Will you help me with the shopping tomorrow?'	6 'N	ly plane arrives at ten in the morning,' said Andrew. (tel

7 'Would you like me to give you some money for a pizza?'

Urban legends

I can understand the meaning of different intonation patterns.



Listening Strategy

Speakers often use intonation to express their opinion or attitude about the statements they make. Pay attention to the speaker's tone of voice and the intonation they use to find out how they feel about their subject.

- 1 2.08 Read the Listening Strategy. Then listen to the sentences and choose the tone of voice (a or b) each speaker uses.
 - 1 Is that letter for me?
 - a nervous
- **b** surprised
- 2 No, that's not right. Let me show you.
 - a angry **b** patient
- 3 This is my seat.
- a certain **b** uncertain
- 4 That makes me feel much better.
 - a sarcastic
- **b** enthusiastic
- 5 That didn't hurt at all. a surprised
- **b** sarcastic
- 6 The film's quite good.
- a unsure
- 7 He's never on time.
- a angry
- 8 This party's brilliant.
- **b** patient

b enthusiastic

- a sarcastic b enthusiastic 2 2.08 Listen again and repeat the sentences, copying the
- 3 Now try saying the sentences in exercise 1 in the other tone of voice.

- 4 (2.09) Listen and repeat the different intonation patterns for statements.
 - 1 Certain 3 Qualifying

It's a great story.

them. Practise saying them.

- It's a great story. It's a great story. 2 Uncertain 4 Sarcastic
- 5 2.10 Listen to these statements being said in two different ways. Number them 1 and 2 in the order you hear

It's a great story.

- You like this kind of story.
- a certain **b** uncertain 2 This is just what I wanted.
- a certain **b** sarcastic
- 3 This isn't quite what I was expecting
- a qualifying **b** certain 4 He thinks it's a reasonable price.
 - a qualifying **b** uncertain
- 5 This steak is the best I've ever eaten.
- a sarcastic b certain
- 6 That's really nice of him.
 - a uncertain b sarcastic
- 6 2.11 Listen to the conversation. Choose the correct answers (a-d).
 - 1 How does Max feel when he starts telling his story?
 - a Reluctant to tell it.
 - b Impatient with interruptions.
 - c Unsure how the story goes.
 - d Worried that it is too scary.
 - 2 What is the story about?
 - a Aghost.
 - b A student who is lost.
 - c What to do in bad weather.
 - d The inhabitants of a village in Ireland.

 - 3 What do the people listening think of the story?
 - a It's gripping.
 - b It's hilarious throughout.
 - c It's annoying.
 - d It's too similar to the first one.
 - 4 What does Caro think of Max's comment about her?
 - a She's really annoved.
 - b She admits that Max's comment could be right.
 - c She criticises Max in self-defence.
 - d She does not trust his opinion of her.
 - 5 What does Max agree with Jill about?
 - a That Caro is easily fooled.
 - b That Caro is more good-natured than he is.
 - c That lan's story is better than his.
 - d That Ian should buy the coffees.



Grammar

Reporting verbs

I can report what people have said in a variety of ways.

keport the sentences using the reporting verbs below
and that.

admit announce argue complain deny insist promise

- 1 Ian said 'I didn't leave the door open.'
 Ian denied that ...
- 2 'I think it would be dangerous to go out in this weather,' said George.
- 3 Molly said, 'The traffic is so noisy that I can't hear myself think!'
- 4 'I've decided to dye my hair orange,' said Mike.
- 5 'Don't worry. I definitely won't tell anyone your secret,' Laura told me.
- 6 Jackie said, 'This *can't* be my bag because it's the wrong colour'
- 7 'Yes, it was me who took the money,' said Fred.

2 2.12 Listen and match the speakers with the reported speech.

- a She complained that the weather was too hot. ___
- **b** She agreed that the weather was too hot.
- c She explained that she would be late.
- d She promised that she wouldn't be late.
- e She denied that she was ill.
- f She insisted that she was ill.
- g She argued that it was too expensive. __
- h She agreed that it was too expensive. ___

3 Write the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 to / for / invited / lunch / them / they / us / join
- 2 helping / escape / to / denied / thieves / he / the
- 3 into / on / lift / she / me / insisted / town / giving / a
- 4 that / picnic / have / suggested / should / a / Jo / we
- . that, plane, hate, sappested, should, a, so, the
- 5 Ned / losing / me / tickets / blamed / for / our
- 6 tomorrow / that / to / me / she / promised / lend / DVD
- 7 advised / go / not / doctor / running / the / him / to
- 8 answer / that / didn't / admitted / she / Nina / the / know

4 Correct the underlined mistakes in the sentences. Use the correct reporting structures.

- 1 She begged him not telling anyone what he'd heard.
- 2 I suggested to meet him outside the cinema at eight.
- 3 Belinda reminded me not forgetting the festival tickets.
- 4 Anna recommended us to try the new burger bar in town.
- 5 The teacher accused Jon to cheat in the test.
- 6 Suzie apologised of not remembering to invite me.

5 Complete the sentences with a preposition if necessary and the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- 1 Nick boasted _____ (come) top in the test.
 2 Our teacher forbade us _____ (use) a
 - dictionary.
- 3 My dad criticised me _______ (spend) too much.
 4 His neighbour demanded ______ (he / turn
- down) his music.

 5 She warned us _____ (not / stay) in that part
- of town.

 6 He confessed _______ (sell) stolen goods.
- 7 | proposed ______ (we / find) somewhere to have a coffee.
- 8 Clara insisted ______ (give) them a hand with the cooking.

6 Report the dialogue in your notebook using appropriate reporting verbs. There may be more than one answer.

Greg Hi, Katya. I'm so sorry I didn't come to your barbecue yesterday.

Katya Actually, I was quite upset about it, Greg.

Greg It really wasn't my fault!

Katya I won't listen to any more of your lies, Greg.

Greg But I couldn't come because I broke my wrist and had to go to hospital!

Katya Oh, I see ... Well, why don't you come over this afternoon?

Great – and I'll definitely be there this time!

Katya OK. Oh, and don't forget to bring my birthday present with you!

Word Skills

Nouns and dependent prepositions

I can use nouns and dependent prepositions.

	sentences	

- 1 Nowadays there is a constant demand
- 2 Do you have any objections
- 3 Many people have a preference
- 4 It's unlikely that the existence
- 5 It's easy to develop an addiction
- 6 Does anyone think our dependence
- 7 The 1950s Space Age had a great effect
- a to inviting Emma for dinner?
- **b** on computers nowadays is dangerous?
- c on people's belief in aliens.d for watching sci-fi rather than fantasy films.
- e to video games if you play them too often.
- f for better and faster technology.
- g of life on other planets will ever be proved.

2 Complete the text with the words below.

belief difference evidence increase interest need obsession reason

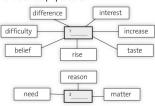


A few years ago, a National Geographic Society poll revealed that 36% of Americans (about 190 million people) believe in aliens. while only 17% do not, and the remaining 47% are undecided. The figures may be surprising, but people have had an 1 in aliens since the late 1940s. A 2 in flying saucers. of these alien spaceships backed up by apparent 3_ in the form of grainy black and white photos, soon turned into an , with people claiming to have actually made contact with beings from outer space. More recently, there has been an 5 in this fascination with extraterrestrial life forms, thanks to detailed video footage 'proof' (created with high-quality 3-D computer software). It's hard to explain the for this continued fascination; to many people, there seems to be little 7 between thinking UFOs exist and believing in magic. Perhaps it's just that we have always had the 8 for a little mystery in our lives.

VOCAB BOOST!

Use mind maps to organise groups of words that are connected. For example, you can group nouns around their different prepositions and quickly see which share the same preposition.

3 Read the Vocab boost! box. Then complete the mind maps with the correct prepositions.



- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.
 - 1 Is there really no possibility _____ you changing your mind?
 - 2 This is probably a matter _____ the police.
 - 3 There's a big difference _____ price between taking the bus and getting a taxi.
 - 4 Is your taste ____ clothes the same as your friends'?
 - 5 There's been a sharp rise _____ temperatures this month.
 - 6 The police didn't find any evidence _____ a break-in.
- 5 Use a dictionary and correct the mistakes with prepositions in the sentences. Tick the two sentences that do not contain any mistakes.
 - No one expected the band to rise in fame so quickly.
 - 2 My cousin's gap year gave her a real taste for travel.
 - 3 Bill and his girlfriend have had a difference in opinion and aren't speaking.
 - 4 You look very pale is something the matter of you?
 - 5 Customers have recently been experiencing difficulty in using this website.
 - 6 There's no point of getting upset about it. ____
- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition and your own ideas.
- 1 I've never understood the point
- 2 Where I live, there's been a rise _____
- 3 Most of my friends have an interest
- 4 I wish we could find a solution
- 5 | hardly ever have trouble _____

Reading

Media wars

I can understand an article that discusses different types of media.

Revision: Student's Book page 80

Replace the underlined words with the correct form of the phrasal verbs.

find out hole up let on make out play on set up take in zoom in on

- 1 I can't believe you were deceived by his tricks!
- 2 The criminals established false bank accounts.
- 3 I hate advertising that takes advantage of our fears.
- 4 Mark told us that he was planning a surprise for Anna.
- 5 The police discovered what the criminals were planning.
- 6 The media paid special attention to the government's military plans.
- 7 He claimed that he was rich, but it wasn't true.
- 8 The bank robbers were hiding in a friend's house.

2 Read the text. What does the real story behind The War of the Worlds show us?

Reading Strategy

In a multiple-choice task:

- 1 Questions always appear in the same order as the information about them in the text.
- 2 The correct answer will match the meaning of what you find in the text, but it isn't usually expressed in the same words.
- 3 When there's a question about the main idea of the text or the author's opinion, it usually appears last.

3 Read the Reading Strategy and the text again and choose the correct answers (a-d).

- 1 The announcer on the radio play in 1934
 - a said American farmers were being attacked.
- b suggested that what he was saying was difficult to believe.
- c explained that America was invading Mars.
- d was suffering from a panic attack.
- 2 HG Wells's famous novel
 - a was adapted for the radio.
 - b deceived millions of people.
 - c became famous in 1934.
- d was about media manipulation.
- 3 Newspapers didn't like the radio because
 - a it was more exciting.
 - b it controlled people.
 - c it worried people.
 - d it was a rival for income.
- 4 The stories in the newspapers about the play
 - a were based on information from another radio station.
 - b have been forgotten about today.
 - c are only being questioned today.
- d explained what really happened.
- 5 The writer wants to show that
 - a people can be made to believe that they are being attacked by aliens.
 - b there wasn't enough advertising for both the radio and newspapers in the 1930s.
 - c the radio and newspapers are enemies.
 - d the media can create a legend that is not true.

Ladies and gentlemen, I have a grave announcement to make. Incredible as it may seem . . . those strange beings who landed in the Jersey farmlands tonight are . . . an invading army from the planet Mars.'

This announcement in 1934 supposedly scared a million Americans into believing that thousands of their fellow citizens were fighting for their lives against giant aliens. It came from a radio play, read by Orson Welles, that was based on HG Wells's famous 1898 novel The War of the Worlds, and it has become an American media legend. However, as we all know, legends are rarely based on the truth.

The arrival of the radio in the 1930s provided people with an exciting new channel of communication - but it also provided newspapers with unwanted competition. Throughout the decade, more and more people had come to rely on the radio for news, and newspapers had been losing income from advertising. In addition, many people were worried about its possible use as a form of mind control. The War of the Worlds gave newspapers the perfect excuse to exploit these fears and attack their rival as irresponsible. The day after the play was broadcast, newspaper front pages claimed the radio play had caused panic across the country, with people rioting and even committing suicide. However, the stories were fabricated and completely false. Recent research has shown that most people were listening to another radio station that evening, and there are no records of mass hysteria.

The newspapers of the time wanted the public to believe that new technology could not be trusted, and they did an extremely good job. For decades, the story of people's reaction to The War of the Worlds was seen as an example of how the media could cause panic. It is only now that researchers are realising that the whole episode is an example of something even more worrying: it shows how the media could fabricate and maintain a lie for nearly a century.



Speaking

Presentation

I can discuss the link between technology and crime.



GANGS STEALING 17 CARS A DAY IN HIGH-TECH SPATE OF 'KEYLESS' THEFTS ON LONDON'S STREETS

Look at the photo and the headline. Then talk for about one minute about how technology has led to an increase in some crimes, but also to new ways of fighting crime. Think about:

- · the internet.
- · theft of expensive items.
- · surveillance and anti-theft measures.
- 1 Read the task above. Then choose the correct option, a or b, in the sentences below.
 - 1 The headline refers to how technology can
 - a cause certain crimes to increase.
 - b help to fight crime.
 - 2 The photo shows how technology can
 - a cause certain crimes to increase.
 - b help to fight crime.
- 2 2.13 Listen to a student doing the task. Which of the topics below does he mention?

artificial intelligence car crime computers credit cards email scams mobile phones television

Speaking Strategy

Avoid speaking in short, single sentences. Try to develop your statements with extra information, details and examples. Learn a variety of phrases for introducing them.

3 Read the Speaking Strategy. Then complete the phrases for introducing extra information and examples with the words below.

instance kind that way what words

a One example of ______ would be ...

b So, for ______,

c ______ I mean by that is ...

d The _____ of thing I'm talking about is ...

e In other ______, ...
f Or to put it another ______,

T Or to put it another _____

- 4 2.13 Listen again. Complete these sentences from the student's presentation with the correct phrases from exercise 3. Write a–f.
 - 1 ___ an email saying you've won millions in a lottery.
 - 2 ___ cars are much harder to steal these days.
 - 3 ___ criminals can use their knowledge of technology to commit crimes.
 - 4 ___ people don't commit crimes if there are cameras about.
 - 5 __ crime doesn't stop; it just moves to another area.
 - 6 the mobile phone.

A social media campaign using the hashtag #nomakeupselfie has raised £8 million for charity in just six days. Huge numbers of women, including many celebrities, have posted photos of themselves wearing no make-up and nominated friends to do the same. At the same time, they encourage their friends to donate money to Cancer Research UK. However, the campaign was started by an individual, not by Cancer Research, and shows how social media can be a force for good.

HALF of all young people say cyberbullying is part of everyday life as majority of parents admit they are scared for their children online

Look at the news report and the headline. Then talk for about one minute about how social media can make people's lives better or worse. Think about:

- friends and networks.
- · cyberbullying and lies.
- · petitions and online campaigns.

5	Read the task above.	Then make	notes unde	er the headings
	below.			

Examples of how friendships are strengthened	
Examples of cy	berbullying / lies
Examples of ho	ow social media campaigns can make a

6 Now do the task using your notes from exercise 5. Remember to include phrases from exercise 3.



Writing

A story

I can write a story on a given topic.

Preparation

- 1 Read the task and the story below. Match time expressions a-f with gaps 1-4 in the text. There are two extra time expressions.
 - a After a few more minutes
 - b It all started one day last term
 - c Looking back
 - d On the day of the ceremony
 - e The following year
 - f Within two or three weeks

Write a story about an occasion when somebody started a rumour which caused problems.

- 2 Answer the questions. Which paragraph (A-D) contains:
 - 1 the main event in the story?
 - 2 speculation about how somebody felt? ___
 - 3 information about how it all started?
 - 4 information about different students' plans?
- 3 Rewrite the sentences so that they have a similar meaning. Start with the words in brackets.
 - 1 | wanted to be honest with them. (What | wanted ...)
 - 2 Her opinions hurt my feelings. (What hurt ...)
 - 3 The possibility of failing the exam worried her. (What worried her ...)
 - 4 We needed more time. (What we needed ...)
 - 5 | really wanted to take the exam again. (What I really ...)

Writing Guide

Writing Strategy

When you write a story:

- · you can choose to narrate the events in the first person (using I) or the third person (using he, she, it, they).
- · use paragraphs to show that events happened at different times
- · include time expressions (e.g. a week later, soon afterwards) to move the story forwards.
- · describe how people felt and reacted to the events.

Write a story about an occasion when somebody caused problems by cheating.

- A 1 when we heard that a special guest was going to speak to the school at the summer prize-giving ceremony. I don't know who started the rumour, but people started to say that this guest was going to be the actor Matt Damon. Of course, this was very exciting news!
- B 2___, nearly everybody in the school had heard the rumour. What is amazing is that nearly everybody thought it was true! People started to plan what they were going to do when they saw Matt Damon. Some wanted autographs; others wanted to take selfies. One student even set up a live stream on the internet!
- , the atmosphere in the school was electric. As we waited in the school hall, we whispered excitedly. Then the doors opened and the head teacher walked in with the special guest: the local police commander. We were stunned - and extremely disappointed! We listened while he gave a speech, but when the head teacher asked for questions at the end, nobody said a word. The only question we had in our minds was: where's Matt?
- D 4___, I feel quite sorry for the police commander. He didn't know that we were hoping for Matt Damon, but he probably sensed our disappointment. I still don't know who started the rumour, but I sometimes wonder if they feel bad about it.
- 4 Read the Writing Strategy and the task above. Make notes

Paragraph 1: Set the scene. How did it begin?

Paragraph 2: Lead-up to the main event.

Paragraph 3: The main event. How did people feel / react?

Paragraph 4: Ending / Looking back

5 Write your story using your notes from exercise 4.

CHECK YOUR WORK

Have you ...

- organised the events into paragraphs?
- included adjectives to describe feelings and reactions? used appropriate time expressions?
 - checked your spelling and grammar?

2

3

Review Unit 7

ocabulary	5 Rosie's obsession her favourite band the country.	takes her all over
Complete the sentences with the verbs below.	a for b in	c with
cheat disguise exaggerate fool make photoshop swear tell	6 Until now, nobody has been able to prov life on other planets.	
1 Why don't you just an excuse if you don't want to go to the party?	a ofb for7 The difference Asian and African eleptons	c to phants is that the
2 Don't ! You can't have walked 100 km! 3 that I didn't take your watch. It wasn't me! 4 Ifyou, your test paper won't be accepted. 5 Mary's story didn'tme. I knew she was lying. 6 That picture can't be real. Did youit?	former have smaller ears. a in b with 8 There is an urgent needeffective me the world's refugees. a for b with	c between assures to house
7 Tom couldn't the fact that he'd been crying. 8 me the truth! Did you, or did you not, delete that file from my computer?	4 Complete the text with the phrasal verbs	Mark: /
Mark: /8	find out let on make out play on tak	
Complete the sentences with the adjective form of the	Liars often try to 1 our ignor	
nouns below.	put on an act in order to be believed. The 2 if a person is lying is to 3	
bias ethic hypocrite manipulation truth trust	their body language. They tend to 4	
If you aren't with me about your part in the incident, I won't be able to trust you again. That shop is looking for a person to look	they're being sincere by looking very deepl Don't be 5 by this and listen of they're saying. They won't admit their guilt	ly into your eyes. carefully to what
after their accounts.	subconsciously they will often 6	
3 You're about the referee's decision because you want your team to win.	lying by using too many negatives: 'I swear your tablet. Never. Not once.'	
4 Is it to buy expensive electronic devices	•	
when the people that make them are paid so little?		Mark: /
5 Lola's rather I don't like the way she tries to		
control me and my other friends.	Grammar	
6 It would be of me to accept Ruby's invitation	5 Rewrite the sentences using reported spe	ech
when I don't actually like her.		ecii.
Mark: /6	 'I'll never wear this outfit again.' Monica said 	
	2 'I don't believe you.'	
ord Skills	My dad told my sister	
Character and a second street of a second	3 'I've been talking to Frank.'	
Choose the correct prepositions (a–c).	Susanna tells me	
1 People are worried about the increase knife crime.	4 'You mustn't tell anyone.'	
a of b in c on	Harry told me	
2 Sugary drinks can have a devastating effect a person's health.	5 'I'll give you an answer tomorrow.'	
a in b to c on	Jenny told Tom	
3 Most of the students expressed a preference	6 'I was at a friend's house yesterday.'	
postponing the exam for a week.	Lisa said	
a for b with c to		Mark: /
4 My main objection getting a part-time job is that		
I won't have enough time to study.		

b to

c between

a of

Review Unit 7

6	Rewrite the questions using reported speech.	Use of English
'Did you see the football match yesterday?' Jimmy asked me . 2 'You've ordered the pizzas, haven't you?'		Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets. Use up to six words, including the words in brackets. Do not change the order of the words in brackets.
	l asked Eddie 3 'What languages do you speak?'	1 I just confronted my friend and she has finally
	The tourist asked me 4 'You're going out later, aren't you?'	The student tried to (pass / essay) her own, despite having copied it.
	My dad asked me 5 'Do you like Indian food?' 'Yes, I do.'	3 After collecting them at school, Stephen (lie / mother) his exam results.
	They asked me 6 'Where does your brother work?'	4 In his letter, he explains his (reasons / oppose) the new leadership.
	I asked Emma 7 'Were you late for school this morning?' My mum asked my sister	5 don't understand your(interest / read) my text messages.
	8 'Are you tired?' 'No, I'm not.' We asked him	6 I (offer / accompany) my sister to the doctor's yesterday.
	Mark: /8	7 This morning, my mother (remind / pack) my bag for my holiday.
7	Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.	8 Everybody is (blame / break) the window, but it wasn't my fault.
	1 Kevin insisted on for our meal, although I was quite happy to share the bill. (pay)	9 (apologise / forget) her name, but she just laughed. 10 They couldn't(deny / vandalise) the
	We congratulated my uncle on the photo competition. (win)	bus stop because they were caught red-handed.
	3 You promised anyone about our secret place. (not / tell)	Mark: /10 Total: /60
	4 I've agreed with our school's next fund- raising event. (help)	I can
	5 My grandmother apologised for me a birthday card. (not / send)	Read the statements. Think about your progress and tick one of the boxes.
	6 Charlotte's friends encouraged her the drama group. (join)	\star = I need more practice. $\star \star \star$ = No problem!
	7 The waiter recommendedtwo portions of chips instead of four. (order)	** = I sometimes find this difficult.
	8 The doctor advised me basketball for a week. (not / play)	I can talk about telling the truth and lies.
	Mark: /8	I can report what people have said and asked.
		I can understand the meaning of different intonation patterns.
		I can report what people have said in a variety of ways.
		I can use nouns and dependent prepositions.
		I can understand an article that discusses different types of media.
		Loan discuss the link between

technology and crime. I can write a story on a given topic.

8

Change the world

a a demonstration

b a petition

c speeches

Vocabulary



1 shout

3 go on

2 hold up

1 Match 1-7 with a-g.

Protest

I can talk about local and global issues.

4 listen to d a rally	
5 hold e inequality	2 The British population has increased because of
6 sign f slogans	and 12% of UK residents were born outside
7 demonstrate against g placards	the country.
2	3 Although there is less
3	affect a large part of the world's population. 5 More and more countries have, and that makes the world more dangerous, not safer. 6 Although has been tackled in places like universities, there is discrimination against women in many places.
5 Emily thinks companies might act more responsibly if	6 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs below.
people stop buying their products. 6 Emily thinks that protesting against something is useful.	campaign organise send stand support vote
4 Match the words below with the situations. corruption disease global warming homelessness terrorism unemployment 1 We interviewed Tom, who had been living on the streets for a year. 2 All Americans will remember 11 September 2001, when two planes crashed into the World Trade Center. 3 Ebola, which is a virus, has killed thousands of people in West Africa. 4 A politician from New York, who accepted money from companies in return for changing policies to benefit them, has been sent to prison. 5 My brother, Jack, who has got a degree, still hasn't been	
able to find a job 6 The weather in the Caribbean, where there have been	I've decided to 1 on behalf of an independent candidate for next year's elections for
extremely strong hurricanes, has been the worst on record. ———	President. I don't 2

5 Complete the sentences with the nouns below. censorship famine gender inequality immigration

1 Banning controversial books is an example of

nuclear weapons racism

Second and third conditional

I can use second and third conditionals.

1	Correct the mistakes in the second conditional sentences.
	Tick the correct sentences.

If I know the answer, I would tell you.

- 1 He can save money if he didn't buy so many clothes.
- 2 If it snows tomorrow, we might not have to go to school.
- 3 I would listen to your parents' advice if I were you.
- 4 If Dan were older, he would be able to ride a motorbike. 5 She could go to university if she would study harder.
- 6 If they aren't so tired, they'd come out with us later. 7 Pat would learn to play the guitar if he has more time.

2	Complete the third conditional sentences with the correct
	form of the verhs helow

fall	go	help	not leave	lend	not remember	see	tel

If he'd finished his homework, he would

- to bed earlier. you some money if you'd 2 I could asked me.
- if I hadn't reminded her. 3 She might 4 If they Sam recently, they would have
- invited him to the concert. 5 We could him if we'd known he was
- in trouble.

you her secret.

- 6 If the bus on time, we might have missed the start of the match.
- 7 You could have hurt yourself if you off that ladder! 8 If Jenny didn't trust you, she wouldn't
- 3 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs

in brackets.

The internet has transformed campaigning. Campaign organisers couldn't publicise their campaigns if we (have) the internet. Many protests and demonstrations simply 2

(not happen) if the public hadn't learned about the campaigns through social media. Many people say they would only get involved in a campaign if they (see) their online friends were

too. Support for direct action such as protests (not be) so great if the organisers

couldn't send details about where and when so quickly and to so many people. And in the past, if there had been a major news story like a demonstration, it (take) a whole day to be reported;

(post) images from your smartphone, they could be online almost instantly for everyone to see.

4 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 Supposing / Unless we didn't have antibiotics life would be very different.
- 2 She wouldn't have voted for him supposing / unless she really thought he could make a difference.
- 3 Unless / Even if we got rid of nuclear weapons, there would still always be wars.
- 4 Unless / Supposing everyone thought their vote didn't count? Nobody would vote!
- 5 I would never vote for that party, supposing / even if I were old enough.
- 6 Unless / Supposing I hadn't got lost, I wouldn't have found such a beautiful view!

5 Choose the correct options (a-c) to complete the text.

How would you feel if you 1__ the right to vote as an adult? Or 2___ you lived in a country where it was illegal not to vote - how would you feel then? In many countries where voting isn't compulsory, the number of people doing so has fallen dramatically. If their ancestors 3 that fewer than 60% of the public would vote during the US presidential

elections, they 4__ have fought so hard for that right. But there are 22 nations around the world where you'd have to vote in an election, 5__ you didn't want to And if you lived in Australia, you could be fined 6 you voted!



- 1 a hadn't b didn't have c hadn't had 2 a unless b even if c supposing 3 a had known b knew c would know
- 4 a couldn't b might not c hadn't
- 5 a supposing **b** unless c even if 6 a unless b even if c supposing
- 6 Rewrite the sentences in the second or third conditional so that they have the same meaning. Use the words in brackets.
 - 1 She didn't receive the email so she missed the meeting. (if)
 - 2 He could beg me to go, but I'd still refuse! (even)
 - 3 Because I'm not from Greece, I don't speak Greek, (were)
 - 4 What would you do first if you were the President? (supposing)
 - 5 My computer's broken, so I can't check my emails. (could)
 - 6 If he hadn't thought it was really important, he wouldn't have gone on the demonstration. (unless)

Listening

Hashtag activism

I can use discourse markers to help predict what will be said next.

FIGHT ALL CUTS 2.JOB LOSSES

I'm Charlotte. I'm seventeen and I live in Bristol, which is, '__, one of the coolest cities in the south-west of England. My friends and I saw reports of the national anti-austerity demonstration in London - '__, where people were protesting against the threatened cuts in welfare from the new government. It was too far for us to travel, but '__ we wished we could have been there. And then one of my friends said, '__, why don't we organise one here?' We put up an invitation on Facebook to all of our friends. '__, we hadn't done anything like it before so we didn't know what to expect. But it just grew from there, and on the day, five thousand people turned up to demonstratel It was a completely amazing experience.

6__, a lot of great things have come out of that one Facebook page. 7__, we are now collecting food for local food banks and women's shelters. We're only young, but 8__, with Facebook, we're effective!'

1 Choose the correct linkers (a-c) to complete the text.

1 a all the same **b** incidentally c for instance 2 a you know **b** nevertheless c well 3 a all the same b by the way c for instance 4 a Well **b** Nevertheless c As I was saying 5 a Mind you **b** For instance c Talking of which 6 a All the same b By the way c However 7 a Still **b** Incidentally c For instance 8 a even so **b** for instance c by the way

2 2.15 Listen and check your answers to exercise 1.

Listening Strategy

As you listen, pay special attention to discourse markers (linking phrases), which connect pieces of information to each other. For example, however introduces a contrast, whereas for instance introduces an example.

2	Read the Listen	 d d -l-	41	Land to the same

- 1 | am not sure who to vote for.
- 2 We couldn't go to London to demonstrate.
- 3 I don't really understand how Twitter works.
- 4 My sister went on a protest march at the weekend.
 5 Scientists say it will be difficult to reverse global
- warming.
- 6 Journalists are sometimes difficult to trust.
- a Nevertheless, I will try to use it.
- **b** Even so, that's no excuse not to do it at all.
- c Still, we managed to protest effectively in other ways.
- d Talking of protests, did you sign that petition about equal rights?
 e By the way, did you know that Matt is studying journalism
- at university?
- f All the same, it would be better to try to do something about it.

4 2.16 Listen and check your answers.

5 Q 2.17 Listen and match speakers 1–4 with sentences A–E. There is one extra sentence.

This speaker:

- A talks about a particular online protest and how it evolved into something else.
- **B** explains that the perceived lack of interest in politics in the young is not accurate.
- C took action to encourage young people's interest in politics.
- D proves that social media is essential in political campaigns.
- E feels that there is no division between social media



Grammar

Mixed conditionals

I can use mixed conditionals.

- 1 Write the words in brackets in the correct order to form mixed conditional sentences. Add a comma in the correct place.
 - 1 If (know / you'd / the answer / you'd / listened).
 - 2 If (weren't / I'd / have / raining / it / walked).
 - 3 If (he / have / Lucas / older / voted / could / were).
 - 4 If (chips / have / hungry / I'd / those / was / eaten / I).

 - 6 If (you / I / have / that / were / done / wouldn't / I).
- 2 Choose the correct options (a-c) to complete the mixed conditional sentences.
 - 1 If Tony ___ the lottery, he would be rich.
 - a wins b had won c would win
 - 2 Life ___ difficult if they hadn't invented electricity!
 - a would be b had been c was
 - 3 If you'd burned the cake, we ___ eat it.
 - a can't b weren't able to c couldn't
 - 4 If Zoe were braver, she ___ for Ed's phone number.
 - a might have asked b might asking c might not ask
 - 5 We'd have gone to school if it ___ the weekend.
 a weren't b hadn't been c isn't
 - 6 If I ___your advice, I'd have asked for it.
 - a want b would want c wanted
 - 7 If I hadn't seen the news, I ___ about the accident.
 - a didn't know b wouldn't know c hadn't known
- 3 Complete the mixed conditional sentences with up to five words, including the correct form of the words in brackets. Do not change the order of the words.
 - 1 I would be sad if (I / never / meet) you!
 - 2 If Max hadn't run so fast, (he / not / exhausted).
 - 3 They wouldn't be nervous about the exam (they / study / harder).
 - 4 (you / be / poor) you'd spent all your money yesterday.
 - 5 If Lily had used suncream on the beach, (she / burned / now)!
 - 6 I would have written to you if (I / know / address).

4 Complete the email with one word in each gap to make mixed conditional sentences.

Hi Daisy	
Did you watch Comic Relie	ef on TV last night? I might 1
missed it if my mum 2	such a huge fan – if she
3 reminder	d me it was on, I'd be really annoyed!
Of course, it 4	have been so funny if the people taking
part weren't really famous	. And the amount of money they've raised
wouldn't 5	so much if the public hadn't joined in as well
Anyway, it was great fun a	and I watched it to the end - but I wouldn't
be so tired today if I 6	gone to bed at my usual time!
See you soon, Artur	

5 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Oxfam is a world leader in delivering emergency relief. If it weren't for this charity, thousands of children in Europe 1 (go) hungry during World War II. Today, desperate people (not have) clean water if Oxfam hadn't made this a priority during humanitarian disasters. And if it (not be) for Oxfam, the NGO ActionAid might not exist either; there wouldn't be so much pressure on governments to provide healthcare and education and to combat climate change if these charities 4_ develop). But Oxfam might not be so successful nowadays if it 5 (not recognise) the importance of linking business with charity. Oxfam employs thousands of people worldwide, but it couldn't have become the UK's biggest high-street seller of second-hand books if it 6 (not be) also for the thousands of volunteers who give their



Word Skills

Verb patterns

I am aware of and can use different verb patterns.

1	NATIONAL AND ADDRESS OF THE ADDRESS
	Write the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 a / to / have / take / airport / We'll / taxi / us / the
- 2 teacher / The / again / us / our / test / made / do
- 3 you / Would / later / prefer / call / to / me / back /?
- 4 stop / war / was / The / to / president / made / the
- 5 someone / bicycle / your / Did / fix / get / you / to /?
- 6 check / cut / You'd / doctor / have / better / a / that 7 school / making / walk / Vic's / Is / mum / him / to /?

2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 We're having our dog looked / looking after by a neighbour.
- 2 I've left the keys hidden / hiding under the mat.
- 3 The film will keep you guessing / guessed to the end!
- 4 Don't leave that candle burning / burned when you go
- 5 They got their house painted / painting by a friend.
- 6 I don't want that painting throwing / thrown away.
- 7 I've finally got my tablet working / worked again!
- 8 Rob found his sister waited / waiting outside.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- (tell) me the complete truth. 1 I'd prefer you 2 I found this bottle _ __ (float) in the sea. _ (buy) our
- 3 My parents can't get anyone ___ flat. 4 I had the garage _____ ____ (service) my car.
- 5 Would you like your meal ______ (serve) with chips or salad?
- 6 I think we should ask him (help) us.
- 7 Tony was made __ (apologise).

4 Choose the correct options (a-c) to complete the text.

Most people would prefer the world's problems 1__ through non-violent actions and there have been many successful peaceful protests over the years. One of the most famous took place when a 42-year-old African American woman changed the course of history - just by sitting on a bus. In 1955 in the United States, black people 2 to give up their seats on public transport for white passengers. So one day, when a white man boarded a full bus which Rosa Parks was on, the driver tried to get four black people 3 their seats. The law at the time said that he couldn't have a white person 4__ while black people had seats. Rosa Parks wanted this law 5___, so she refused to give up her seat for the white man. Not

surprisingly for that time, the authorities had the police her. But her actions made the rest of the USA 7 notice. and this was the start of non-violent mass protests in support of civil rights.

1	a	solved
2	a	were made

7 a take

- **b** to be solved
- c to solve c make

c taken

- **b** were making
- b left 3 a leaving c to leave
- 4 a to stand **b** standing c stood
- c change 5 a changed **b** changing 6 a to arrest **b** arrest c arresting b to take

5 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- 1 I want us to forget our silly argument. I want our
- 2 They should have their photos taken by a professional. They should have a _
- 3 I don't think anyone will steal your bag. I don't think you'll have _
- 4 The police made him prove his age.
- 5 I'd rather we met tomorrow evening. I'd prefer us 6 We couldn't make the man understand us.
- We couldn't get _ 7 She was made to leave the party by her mum.

Her mum VOCAB BOOST!

When you learn verb patterns, you'll see that dictionaries usually present them with sb / sth, for example, get sb / sth to do sth. You can record new verb patterns in this way, or you can write more meaningful or personal examples and highlight the verb pattern:

My dad couldn't get the car to start this morning. I was made to do my maths homework again.

6 Read the Vocab boost! box. Then complete the sentences with your own ideas. Use verb patterns from this page. Circle the verb patterns in your sentences.

- 1 I hate being made _
- 2 I plan to get my
- 3 I'd prefer my parents
- 4 I would never leave my_
- 5 I sometimes have my
- 6 I've always wanted my_
- 7 I once found my __

8F

Reading

The Help

I can understand an extract from an American novel.

Revision: Student's Book page 92 Complete the sentences with the phrasal verbs below. got ahead helps out set up squeeze in stepped down thinking up by working hard and showing enthusiasm. 2 The doctor said he could a quick appointment at 11.45. 3 Andy has_ as the head of the charity and he is going to work in politics instead. 4 My mum the company ten years ago and it now employs over a hundred people. 5 Sara's always __ _ crazy new ideas for vlogs that never work! 6 Harry at the homeless centre by

2 You are going to read an extract from the novel The Help. The author writes dialogues using the language conventions of the southern states of the USA. Rewrite the sentences below in standard British English.

cooking in the kitchen two evenings a week.

- 1 This what she been trying to ask me the past two weeks.
- 2 "You think Miss Leefolt gone agree to that?"
- 3 "... do that not sound kind a dangerous to you?"

Reading Strategy

Read all the text once and then read the questions. Match any questions that are immediately obvious, and identify and note the parts of the text that contain the evidence for your answer. Then carefully read each section of the text again and look for the answers to the remaining questions.

3 Read the Reading Strategy. Match sections A–C in the extract with questions 1–6 below. Each section may be matched with more than one question.

Which section ...

- 1 gives examples of violent racism?
- 2 talks about the number of interviews that Miss Skeeter wants to do?
- 3 discusses the consequences of helping Miss Skeeter for the narrator?
- 4 mentions Miss Skeeter realising that the situation is more difficult than she imagined?
- 5 talks about not telling anyone about the plan?
- 6 suggests that Miss Skeeter's behaviour is rude?



Kathryn Stockett's novel *The Help* is set in the 1960s, a time when the Girll Rights movement is campaigning all across the USA for equal rights for African Americans. Skeeter Phelan, a white woman, wants to write a book to protest against the unfair treatment of African Americans – a book about the experiences of African American maids who work for white families. In this extract, Skeeter asks Albileen, a black maid, if she can interview her.

A "What can I do for you?"

"I have an idea. Something I want to write about. But I need your help."

I let all my breath out. I like Miss Skeeter, but come on. Sure, a phone call would a been nice. She never would a just shown up on some white lady's step without calling. But no, she done plopped herself down like she got ever right to barge in on me at home.

"I want to interview you. About what it's like to work as a maid." (...)

"Like the Miss Myrna column?" I say, flat as a pan. "Bout cleaning?"

"Not like Miss Myrna. I'm talking about a book," she say and her eyes is big. She excited. "Stories about what it's like to work for a white family. What it's like to work for, say ... Elizabeth."

B I turn and look at her. This what she been trying to ask me the past two weeks in Miss Leefolt kitchen. "You think Miss Leefolt gone agree to that? Me telling stories about her?"

Miss Skeeter's eyes drop down some. "Well, no. I was thinking we wouldn't tell her. I'll have to make sure the other maids will agree to keep it secret, too."

I scrunch up my forehead, just starting to get what she's asking, "Other maids?"

"I was hoping to get four or five. To really show what it's like to be a maid in Jackson." (...)

© She looks excited, like this is some kind of game. For a second, I think I might be more mad than I am tired.

"Miss Skeeter," I whisper, "do that not sound kind a dangerous to you?"

"Not if we're careful-"

"Shhh, please. Do you know what would happen to me if Miss Leefolt find out I talked behind her back?"

"We won't tell her, or anyone." She lowers her voice some, but not enough. "These will be private interviews."

I just stare at her. Is she crazy? "Did you hear about the colored boy this morning? One they beat with a tire iron for

accidentally using the white bathroom?"

She just look at me, blink a little. "I know things are unstable but this is—"

"And my cousin Shinelle in Cauter County? They burn up her car cause she went *down* to the voting station."

"No one's ever written a book like this," she say, finally whispering, finally starting to understand, I guess. "We'd be breaking new ground. It's a brand-new perspective."

8G

Speaking

Collaborative task

I can discuss a question with a partner and work towards an agreement.

Imagine that you are discussing practical ways in which people can help to combat pollution. How effective is each of the five measures?



- 1 \$\inc 2.18\$ Read the task above and listen to two students doing the task. Answer the questions. Which three measures do the students agree will be particularly effective?
- 2 KEY PHRASES Match the sentence halves in each group below to make phrases.

Starting a discussion a with ... , shall we? 1 Shall we b by talking about ... 2 Let's begin c start with ... ? 3 We could start Expressing an opinion d chief consideration is ... 4 I'm of the 5 For me, the e strongly that ... f say that ... 6 Personally, I'd 7 I feel quite g opinion that ... Adding an opinion h only that, ... 8 Not i also believe that ... [9 Yes, and another 10 Good point. And I i thing.... Agreeing and disagreeing 11 Absolutely, I couldn't k some extent. However, ... 12 I'm with I agree more. 13 Yes, I think m you on that. 14 That's true to n you're right. 15 I'm not sure I o different view on that. 16 I take a rather p how I see it. 17 That's not quite q agree.

- 3 2.18 Listen again and tick the phrases in exercise 2 that you hear.
- 4 2.19 Listen to students doing the second part of the task. Which two measures do they choose?

Speaking Strategy

In a discussion, listen carefully and respond to what your partner says. Learn phrases for interacting with your partner so that you take turns and both contribute to the discussion.

5 KEY PHRASES Read the Speaking Strategy. Then complete the phrases with the words below.

	tled think What view
Involving your p	
Would you 1	with that?
, don't you 2	? 🔲
3V	ve agree that ?
What's your 4	on that?
5C	lo you think about ?
Interrupting	
Sorry to 6	, but
Hang on a 7	I think
Yes, and not 8	that,
Reaching an agr	eement
So, shall we 9	a decision?
We need to 10	to a decision.
We 11	to decide what / which
That's 12	then

- 6 2.19 Listen again and tick the phrases in exercise 5 that you hear.
- 7 Look at the task in exercise 1 again and the options below. Write notes about how effective each measure is.

Closing fossil- fuelled power stations	Flying less	Not littering
Using electric and hybrid cars	How effective are these measures at combatting pollution?	Joining an environmental organisation

- 8 Which two measures will you choose? Make a note of your choices and your reasons.
- 9 Now do the task using your notes from exercises 7 and 8.



Writing

A report

I can write a report about a local issue.

Preparation

- 1 Read the task and the report below. How many measures does the writer:
 - a assess?

b suggest?__

Last year, your town council took measures to make your town cleaner and greener. The council would like to hear your views on the measures they have taken and also any suggestions for future improvements.

Write your report.

2 KEY PHRASES Put the phrases in the correct groups. Which are in the article?

It is recommended that ... It was reported that ... It was thought that ... On balance, ... Taking all the points into consideration, ... This report is intended to ...

Introduction

The aim of this report is to ...

The report is based on / draws on ...

Reporting views

It would seem that ...

According to ...

(People) were of the opinion that ...

Summing up / Giving your opinion

In conclusion, ... To conclude, ... To sum up, ...

5_____

Recommending / Suggesting I would suggest ...

In my opinion, it would be worth ...

Writing Guide

Writing Strategy

When writing a report:

- think carefully about the target reader and write in an appropriate style and tone.
- state the purpose of the report in the first paragraph and any recommendations and suggestions in the final paragraph.
- consider using headings where appropriate to give the report a clear structure.

Introduction

The aim of this report is to assess the measures taken by the council and to put forward recommendations for further action.

Benefits of the measures taken

According to most residents, the new pedestrian zone is a great success. It was also thought that the bike lanes improved road safety. The coach park on the outskirts of the town has also met with approval, as coaches no longer drive into the centre where the streets are very narrow.

Disadvantages of the measures

The increase in parking charges has discouraged people from driving into town, but local shops and businesses are suffering because fewer people come into town to shop. What is more, it would seem that these charges adversely affect disabled people and elderly people who rely on their cars.

Suggestions for future improvements

The majority of residents are of the opinion that there are not enough open green spaces. In my opinion, it would therefore be worth creating a new park on the wasteland near the station. I would suggest that more free parking places for disabled and elderly people are created. In conclusion, the council has made a good start, but a lot more could be done.

3 Read the Writing Strategy and the task below. Make notes under the headings.

Last year, your school took measures to make it cleaner and greener. The head teacher would like to hear your views on the measures they have taken and also any suggestions for future improvements.

Varia aninian of managinas talian

our opinion o			
-			
uggestions fo	r further imp	rovements	
-			

4 Write your report.

	CHECK YOUR WORK
0	Have you
9	divided the report into paragraphs?
	used headings?

checked your spelling and grammar?

Review Unit 8

Vocabulary

1 Complete the text with suitable verbs about protesting.	4 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.
Human rights organisations joined together last weekend to hold a ¹ r_ in support of refugees. The demonstration also gave people the chance to ² p	1 It would be better if the speakers had microphones. 1'd prefer
Mark: / 6	5 The teacher made us re-sit the exam. We were made
	6 My parents refused to go to the rally.
2 Complete the sentences with the words below.	I couldn't get
censorship corruption disease famine globalisation homelessness	Mark: /6
1 Ebola is a very contagious which can spread	5 Choose the correct answers (a–c).
rapidly from one place to another.	1 How many hours of revision did you for your last exam?
2 is the best thing that has ever happened to	
large multinational companies.	2 I'm trying not to too many extracurricular activities this
3 The government has recently been involved in a number o	,
scandals involving fraud and	a help out b step down c take on
One of the most common approaches to is to try to put those affected into shelters.	3 The cyclist managed to of the rest and went on to win the race.
5 A lack of rain has caused a drought, which will in turn lead	
to widespread in the area.	4 Who's going to be the next president of the debating
6 Social networking sites are often prohibited in countries	society when Grace?
where there is of the media.	a steps down b takes on c helps out
Mark: / 6	5 She always really crazy inventions.
,	a puts in b helps out c thinks up
3 Match the verbs in A with the words in B to make protest collocations. Then complete the sentences.	6 The organisers have asked me to at the next fundraising event.
A campaign sign stand support vote write	a take on b get ahead c help out
B a campaign against nuclear power a petition in elections outside the building to the council	Mark: /6
1 Are you allowed to yet, or do	6 Match the sentence halves.
you have to wait until your next birthday?	1 To my mind,
2 When my friends and I, we	2 It's clear to me that we should

if you don't

Mark: 16 **Word Skills**

- 2 It's clear to me that we should
- 3 I feel quite strongly that shops
- 4 People might say that recycling's a waste of time,
- 5 While it's true that fossil fuels are running out,
- a but I believe it's better than nothing.
- b should charge for plastic bags.
- c sugary drinks should be banned.
- d I don't think that nuclear power is the solution.
- e prioritise the use of oil in the future.

Mark:	15

tend to get very involved in it.

4 The protesters are going to _

6 This morning, I was asked to

5 Ecology groups often __

agree that the local library should be closed?

until the director comes out to speak to them.

because they say it harms the environment.

against the proposed new school timetable.

3 Why don't you

8

Review Unit 8

Grammar

7

8

9

Complete the second and third conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.	10 Complete the text with the correct form of the words in brackets.
1 You	One of the greatest ¹ (demonstrate) in history was the 1930 Salt March in India. At the time, there was no ² (democracy) rule in the country as it was governed by the British. Most government policies were ³ (race) because they favoured British citizens over Indians. Civil rights activist Mahatma Gandhi was the leader in the campaign against this ⁴ (equal) and he chose Britain's Salt Acts as a symbol for the ⁵ (just) of the system. These laws prohibited Indians from collecting or selling salt and forced them to buy it from the British. Gandhi's first act was the ⁶ (organise) of a peaceful march from his hometown to the coast where he would collect salt. On 12 March, he set off with less than a hundred ⁷ (protest). Along the way, people listened to his ⁸ (speak) at the meetings he held. Many of them ⁹ (sympathise) with the cause, and by the time he reached the coast on 5 April, the crowd had swollen to tens of thousands. Although 60,000 arrests were made – including Gandhi himself – the march was ¹⁰ (success) in raising awareness of the Civil Disobedience Movement. India was finally granted independence in August 1947.
a problem – and there is! 5 Even if / Supposing / Unless we left now, we wouldn't get to the match on time. Mark: /5	Mark: /1 Total: /6
Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. 1 Heidi speaks German because she went to a German school. If Heidi hadn't gone to a German school,	Read the statements. Think about your progress and tick one of the boxes. * = I need more practice. * * * = No problem! * * = I sometimes find this difficult.
2 I haven't got my own room because my parents didn't buy a big house. If my parents had bought a big house,	I can talk about local and global issues. I can use second and third conditionals. I can use discourse markers to help
He didn't apologise, so I'm angry. I wouldn't be angry if A I didn't apologise our office because I bayen't get any.	predict what will be said next. I can use mixed conditionals. I am aware of and can use different verb patterns.
4 I didn't pay for our coffees because I haven't got any money with me. If I had some money with me, Mark:/4	I can understand an extract from an American novel. I can discuss a question with a partner and work towards an agreement. I can write a report about a local issue.

Use of English

Exam Skills Trainer

Reading

Strategy

When you do a gapped-sentences task, look at the connecting words in options A–E for clues about what must go before or after them.

- 1 Read the Strategy and look at sentences A—E in exercise 2. Find and underline the connecting words. What do they indicate: result, reason, purpose, or contrast?
- 2 Read the text where four sentences are missing. Match the missing sentences (A–E) with the gaps (1–4). There is one extra sentence.

Boston Tea Party

On the cold winter night of 16 December 1773, a group of American colonists approached three British ships anchored in Boston harbour. Once they had boarded the vessels and located the tea that the ships were carrying, they proceeded to empty all 342 of the chests into the sea, destroying their contents forever. At the time, they may not have been aware of the far-reaching implications their actions would have.

The protest, which came to be known as the Boston Tea Party, had its roots in the growing friction between the North American colonists and the British Parliament over the question of taxation. According to the colonists, the British had no right to make them pay taxes as the colonists were not represented in parliament.

Things came to a head on 10 May 1773 when the Tea Act was passed, which required colonists to purchase only British tea. Although cheaper than other teas, this tea was taxed, a fact that the colonists refused to tolerate.

In New York, Philadelphia and Charleston, the colonists had managed to persuade the authorities to reject the tea shipments that had arrived, forcing the ships to return to Britain.

It was the tea that was the cause of their complaint, not the ships, so it was the tea that the colonists destroyed. After three hours, 45 tons of it had been dumped into the harbour, a quantity that would be worth around a million dollars today. Not surprisingly, the British were furious.

In response to the action, Parliament passed a set of laws known as the Coercive Acts in an attempt to assert more control over the Boston settlement. The measure had the opposite effect, however, and only succeeded in provoking the other colonies in the area. ⁴ — This eventually culminated in the American War of Independence (1775–1783), which led to the creation of the nation we now know as the United States of America. It was the Boston Tea Party that set the wheels of independence in motion.

- A However, the governor in Boston refused to cooperate, so the colonists took matters into their own hands.
- **B** So as not to reveal their identity, some of them were disguised as Native Americans.
- C Owing to the popularity of tea in Europe, rival companies had been set up to import tea from China.
- D As a result, all thirteen of them met at the 1774 First Continental Congress to discuss their collaborative resistance to the British.
- E Although the colonists had been protesting against this for some time, their voices had fallen on deaf ears.

Listening

Strategy

Before you do a true or false task, look at the statements and underline the key words. Predict three words that you expect to hear in the recording.

3 Read the Strategy and look at the statement below. Underline the key words and choose the group of words you would expect to hear in the recording. What situations do the other groups refer to?

The speakers are at a rally.

- A musicians, singer, stage
- B crowd, pitch, players
- C microphone, placard, speech
- 4 (2.20) You will hear three texts twice. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

Text 1

- 1 The speakers are teachers. ___
- 2 They are both in favour of the new reform. ___

Text 2

- 3 The speaker describes a natural disaster that was nearly as bad as the last one the country suffered.
- 4 The speaker's intention is to appeal for money to help the victims of the disaster.

ext 3

- 5 It is a fact that other European countries have offered more help to refugees than the UK. ___
- 6 The speaker thinks that British people need to be convinced to welcome more refugees into the country.

Use of English

Strategy

A banked cloze task often tests your knowledge of collocations. Always record common collocations with an example sentence in your vocabulary notebook to help you remember which words go together.

5 Read the Strategy. Then match verbs 1–5 with nouns a–e that they collocate with.

1 tell a an image

2 make b the truth

3 photoshop c evidence

4 fabricate d a difficulty

5 exaggerate e an excuse

Exam Skills Trainer

6 Complete the text with the words below. There are two extra words.

accused	admitted dis	guised	misled	petitions
rallies r	evealed rights	sloga	ns spee	ches
Few politic	cal protests in th	e UK hav	e been m	ore dramatic
than the f	ight for women's	voting 1		At the
start of th	e movement, 2		were	made and
3	were sign	ed, all to	no avail.	In reaction to
	f response, the c			
and shout	ed ⁵	, but	still their	voices were not
heard - th	at is, until 4 Jur	ie 1913, i	when acti	vist Emily Daviso
reportedly	threw herself in	front of	the King's	horse during an
	race at Epsom. 1			
	raised Davison fo			
6				ecently, however
	dy of the images			
	7			
	on. Reports at th			
	ing that Davison			
	en in fact she wa			
	idence supportin			
	ves were found o		ly after he	er death, along
	urn train ticket b			

Speaking

Strategy

A situational role-play tests your ability to negotiate with a partner in order to reach an agreement. There will be times when you don't agree with your partner, in which case, you need to disagree tactfully, e.g. I'm not sure about that.

7 Read the Strategy. Complete the useful phrases below for disagreeing tactfully with someone.

1 I don't think that's such a good 2 I'm not convinced that will

3 That might not be the right_ to go about it. 4 Idon't if that's what we need here.

8 Work in pairs. You and a friend have been asked to design

a poster to publicise an environmental campaign among teenagers. Discuss and agree on the following points to decide what the poster should look like.

· topic

- image
- slogan
- 9 Summarise what you have agreed for each point in exercise 8.

Writing

Strategy

In an opinion essay, you need to use linking expressions to connect and extend your ideas. Not all linking expressions are used in the same position in a sentence.

· •...... 10 Read the Strategy. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 Participating in a campaign can be rewarding. Besides / Too, you can make new friends.
- 2 Petitions are a useful means of gathering support for a cause. Demonstrations can attract many followers also /
- 3 Social media posts can sometimes attract unwelcome responses. Our posts can be shared on other people's timelines in addition / too.
- 4 Selecting the appropriate security settings is important. Furthermore / As well, it is advisable to check who might be able to view and to share our posts.

11 Read the task below and write your essay.

Some people use their social media accounts to express and publicise their political views. Is this a good idea? Write an essay in which you express your opinion, taking into consideration what effect it may have on the people writing the posts and people responding to them.



Consumeri

Vocabulary



Shopping

I can talk about the consumer society.

1	Complete	the tex	t with	the	correct	form	of the	verbs	below

budget get into debt knock down overcharge shop around snap up

year. I 1	carefully for every	thing I need to buy
and the most ex	ensive things are my boo	oks. So, I always
2	and see which shops	are selling things
the cheapest as	I don't want to 3	before
the year has eve	n started. Fortunately, I s	aw a 10% discoun
on books at a loo	cal bookshop and decide	d quickly to
4	the ones that I neede	ed. However, the
shop almost 5	me! The	y had forgotten
to ⁶	the price of the bo	ooks by 10% on
their computers		

2	2.21 Listen to five dialogues about money. Match
	sentences A-F with speakers 1-5. There is one extra
	sentence.

This speaker ...

- A has been spending too much money and has got into debt.
- B hasn't picked up any bargains.
- C explained that she was almost overcharged for something.
- D has been haggling at a local market.
- E has splashed out on something that cost a lot.
- F has been budgeting for a future activity that will cost a lot of money.

3

_	22.21 Listen again orrect form of the v		e the sentence	s with t
at	fford knock down	overspend	shop around	snap u
1	Speaker 1 has been		all day	/.
2	Speaker 2 thinks sh everything on her t			
3	Speaker 3 was able her laptop by 10%.	to	the	price of
4	Speaker 4 has money from a frier		and had to	borrow
5	Speaker 5 says she		some	shoes in



4 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

1	If you overspe	nd, you might get into
2	If you	at the market, the stall owner might
	knock	the price.
3	If you	around, you might find things
	cheaner	

- 4 If you shop in the sales, you might ___ bargains. for how much you can spend before
- 5 If you you go shopping, you won't spend more money than you
- 6 It's always a good idea to check the receipt after you buy something to make sure you haven't been

5 Replace the underlined phrases with the words below.

delivery items notification reviews track wish list

I've been waiting for a number of 1goods that I ordered online. I had a 2list of things that I wanted and decided to buy everything on it! I've been to the website to 3 follow the progress of my order, but there's no information. Neither have I received a 4message with information about 5when they will brings the goods to my house. The 6customer opinions of this site were positive, but my experience of it isn't!

8 When you t___

c	omplete the def	initions.	
1	A w want to buy.	_1	is a list of things that yo
2	A c for goods.	0	is a place where you pay
3	A nsomething.	_ is information	sent to someone about
4	An i or group.	is an individu	al unit, often part of a list
5	see the goods ye		website where you can to buy. It is also a physical rket.
6	A r	_ is an opinion a	bout a product or service.

taken to a person's house, office, or place of work.

using a website or electronic equipment.

something, you follow it by

____ involves goods, letters, parcels, etc. being

the sale.

9B

Grammar

Emphasis

I can use sentence structure to create emphasis.

- 1 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.
 - Chris lost his phone yesterday.
 It was Chris
 - 2 Ella is getting her hair cut tomorrow. It's tomorrow
 - 3 His grandparents moved to New Zealand last year. It's New Zealand
 - 4 My brother wasn't born until 2010. It wasn't until
 - 5 Nick has been learning to ride a motorbike.
 - 6 I have guitar lessons on Saturday mornings. It's on
 - 7 We saw Roberto at the club last night. It was Roberto
 - 8 They don't enjoy watching sci-fi films. It's sci-fi films
- 2 Rewrite the sentences to make a contrast. Begin with the words given and emphasise the words in bold.
 - 1 This bag is made of **leather**. It's not made of plastic. It's leather that
 - 2 The film doesn't finish at 8 p.m. It finishes at 9 p.m. It's at _____
 - 3 My sister didn't give me this present. Leo did. It was
 - 4 | prefer the **blue** dress. | don't prefer the grey one.
 - 5 Tom doesn't drive a Ferrari. He drives a Porsche. It's a
 - 6 Sam isn't going on holiday to Turkey. **Dan** is. It's Dan ____
 - 7 School finishes in June. It doesn't finish in July. It's in
- 3 Rewrite the sentences beginning with What or All.
 - 1 This chicken needs to be cooked a bit longer.
 - 2 You only need to answer two of the exam questions.
 All
 - 3 Jenny returned the broken watch to the shop.
 What
 - 4 We'll just have to buy some drinks for the barbecue.
 - 5 No one can remember the name of the new café.
 - 6 The only thing I know about our new neighbours is that they are Swedish.
 - 7 You mustn't forget to turn off the TV before bedtime. What

IELTSMat

- 4 Write the words in the correct order to make emphatic sentences.
- 1 who / Eva / that / The / person / dog / owns / is
- 2 I / is / thing / spiders / can't / One / stand
- 3 often / is / A / to / they've / place / Japan / been
- 4 who / most / Adele / singer / she / is / The / loves
- 5 doesn't / green / colour / like / The / Laila / is
- 6 try/octopus/food/never/One/I'll/is/!
- 7 like / snowboarding / try / A / he'd / is / sport / to
- 5 Choose the correct words to complete the forum post.

(= +)

¢

Why do teenagers always get the blame for everything?

'One / What thing that really annoys me is getting blamed for all the litter in town, when 'it was / it's often the adults who don't use the bins; 'Where / What the authorities need to do is put CCTV cameras outside so they can see who's responsible! But 'a / the main problem they need to address is providing somewhere for us to go. One 'place / thing where we can hang out is at fast-food restaurants, so 'it's / what's three that people see us in groups and assume we're causing trouble. 'All / One we want is somewhere we can go and enjoy ourselves! dexy33

6 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

We know that plastic is to blame for much of the world's pollution, but 1 the news that a plastic island the size of Texas is forming in the Pacific Ocean that shocked many answer that many countries have come up with is charging customers for plastic bags in shops. And 3_ some countries have done is to completely ban bags that aren't biodegradable. Since these laws were introduced, the use of plastic bags globally has dropped dramatically. 4_ thing you can do to help is to buy a 'bag for life' from a supermarket. When it wears out, 5____ do is take it back to get a free replacement. In some countries, the 6____ place where you still won't be charged for a plastic bag is at an airport or on planes.

9C Listening

Moneyless living

I can distinguish between fact and opinion.



1.	Read the text and decide whether sentences 1–4 are fact (F
	or opinion (O).

Oi	opinion (o).	
1		

2	$\overline{}$
3	

Rich without money

Living without money is not easy. You have to really want to do it and be prepared to give up some things. You will need to lose the impulse to just buy onlything you want. However, you will find another way of living in which you will be happy with all that you already have. And it will be a more creative life that you develop to satisfy your needs. "You will be rich in other ways! In addition, you won't be contributing to the destruction of the environment caused by all the stuff we buy that we don't need.

But imagine what a whole world would be like without money. Would it even be possible? "In fact, philosophers, sociologists and economists have already asked these questions, When money was introduced into our society, it made our lives so much easier in many ways. So would it be impossible to go back now?

Well, there is a middle way. *There are many websites which give people tips on relying less on money, and practical advice on other ways of doing things.

Why not have a look and try some of the ideas? You can save not only money, but also the environment. What have you got to lose?

Listening Strategy

To answer some comprehension questions, you need to be able to distinguish between fact and opinion. Listen carefully for words or phrases that may indicate whether the speaker is expressing a fact or an opinion.

2 Read the Listening Strategy. Then put the phrases below in the correct columns.

actually as far as I'm concerned as I see it in fact in my view in reality I strongly believe I've a feeling that it's been proved that it's true that it's undeniable that my impression is personally the truth is to my mind undeniably

Introducing an opinion	Introducing a fact

3 Q2.22 Listen and write the words used to introduce the sentences. Are the sentences fact (F) or opinion (O)?

1	, bank managers get paid too much. [_]	
2	inflation has remained at the same level	
	r six months	

3	, the government's policies to tackle	
	noverty aren't working	

	porerty aren c	
4		it's better to be a saver than a
	spender.	

;	more Monopoly money is printed eve	ry
	year than real money	Ē

5	the key to happiness is spending money
	on experiences rather than possessions.

4 Q.2.23 Listen to three recordings and choose the correct answers (a-c).

- 1 What is the purpose of the speaker's story?
 - a To show how money changes relationships.
 - **b** To explain why it is better to be poor.
 - c To persuade people to live without money.
- 2 The speakers can't agree that
- a people are generally nice.
 - b couch-surfing has a good philosophy behind it.
 c couch-surfing doesn't cost anything.
- 3 Which of the following is stated in the radio programme as an opinion, not a fact?
 - a Streetbank is an online project.
 - b The co-founders of Streetbank intended to encourage community spirit.
 - c There is no negative side to Streetbank.



Participle clauses

I can use participle clauses.

- 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
 - 1 Taking / Taken with a glass of water, these tablets will cure a headache.
 - 2 That lady talking / talked on the phone must be the manager.
 - 3 Having slept / Sleeping badly last night, Jaime is in a bad mood.
 - 4 Worn / Wearing with a red shirt, these black trousers would look fabulous.
 - 5 Discovered / Having discovered last year, the temple is thought to be thousands of years old.
 - 6 Suddenly realised / realising how late it was, we decided to
 - 7 Being / Been a fan of Sherlock Holmes, I have all the Conan Doyle novels.
- 2 Choose the correct options (a-c) to complete the text.

The most popular time for people to go shopping used to be during the January sales. Now, in some parts of the world there is one particular day that sees shoppers go wild! '__ 'Black Friday', it takes place in November. 2__ Thanksgiving, one of the USA's biggest holidays, on the following Friday millions of Americans rush to the shops, 3__ to save money on their Christmas shopping. Although still 4_ mainly in the USA, Black Friday has also spread to shops in Canada, Mexico and the UK. And 5 to miss out on making money, online stores are also joining in, 6_ huge bargains to their customers. 7__ sensibly, it's a great opportunity for shoppers, but it has also been criticised by many for encouraging consumerism.

1	a	Calling
2	_	Calabanti

- b Called **b** Celebrated
- c Having called c Having

- **b** having hoped
- celebrated c hoped

- 3 a hoping 4 a taken place
- b taking place
- c having taken

- 5 a not wanting b not having wanted
- place c not wanted

- 6 a offered
- b having offered
- c offering

- 7 a Approached b Approaching
- c Having
- approached

- 3 Write the words in the correct order to make sentences with participle clauses. Insert a comma in the correct place.
 - 1 this / taste / Cooked / will / delicious / slowly / meat
 - 2 the / exam / celebrating / passed / are / Having / their / students
 - 3 to / Feeling / lie-in / I've / have / a / lazy / decided
 - 4 he / the / on / climbed / ladder / Holding / up / tight
 - 5 blowing / the / There / breeze / a / trees / was / through
 - 6 very / year / is / Born / nephew / cute / last / my

Complete the sentences with the words below.

After finishing Before leaving On checking Since starting When thinking While playing

- the house, could you do the washing up? at her new school, my sister's made lots of new friends.
- breakfast, they went out for a walk.
- tennis, Petra fell and hurt her ankle. his change, he realised the shop assistant
- had made a mistake. about where to go on holiday, you should consider the price as well as the location.
- 5 Complete the letter with one word in each gap.

Dear Sir

I am writing about some boots I recently purchased from your online store. 1H_ looked at all the designs available. I chose a pair of brown biker boots. The boots I received do not look like the photo on your website. 2M of leather, these boots should be very comfortable, but wearing them, I found them to be quite tight and painful. 4B_ a student, I have very little money, and 5s_ receiving the boots. I've found a similar pair much cheaper elsewhere. I'm sure you must have other you similar feedback, customers ⁶q and I hope you will give me a full refund if I return

Yours

N Kowalski

the boots to you.

2 If I weren't so

be very happy?

and he lost everything.

at the weekly market.

6 My family aren't exactly ___

4 Do you think it's possible to be _

tonight.

3 Vic used to be _

Word Skills

Money idioms

I can use money idioms.

1 Complete the sentences with the correct words.

5 You can often buy fruit and vegetables dirt_

1 How much did you pay for that jacket? What a

, I could afford to come out

off before his business failed

____ in it, but we live

up, but still

	quite comfortably.		children were given silver spoons.	
. 1	Match the sentence halves.	2	2 a cash cow	
1	1 I'll have to tighten my		This is a metaphor for a dairy cow, which produces milk.	
	2 You'll never make ends	3	3 to live on the breadline 🗌	
3	3 After living hand to		In America during the Depression, people would wait in	
	4 Very few people make		line to be given free food, paid for by the government.	
3	Ben's careful with money so he's never been in	4	4 money for old rope 🗌	
	6 We had to pay		The original meaning for this term meant to make money	
7	7 often dream about living in		by selling something that has been used and ought to be	
ä	a the red for very long.		worthless. It comes from the days of sailing ships, when	
1	b mouth for years, she finally became a successful writer.		sailors would cut damaged rope into shorter, undamaged	
(a fortune through playing the lottery.		lengths to sell on land. At sea, long ropes are needed, but	
(d belt next month or I'll soon run out of money.		on land, shorter lengths were still useful and could be sold.	
•	e the lap of luxury, but it's unlikely to happen.		a to be very poor	
1	f meet if you spend more than you earn.		to make money for very little effort	
8	g through the nose for the concert tickets, but it was worth it!		to be privileged	
	Tick the pairs of idioms that have a similar meaning.	C	d business or invention that returns a good level of profit	
	l live hand to mouth / be well off		every year	
	2 be rolling in it / live in the lap of luxury	6 0	Check the meaning of these idioms in a dictionary.	
	B be hard up / be a rip-off	1	feel the pinch 4 cost an arm and a leg	
	4 make a killing / make a fortune	2	2 cost the earth 5 keep your head above water	
	5 be broke / be in the red	3	3 work for peanuts 6 put your money where your	
	6 make ends meet / pay through the nose		mouth is	
1	7 be dirt cheap / tighten one's belt			
1	Complete the text with idioms from exercise 3.			
Iai	ny common idioms have interesting origins which can help to expla	ain tl	heir	
	anings. For instance, 1 apparently replaced t	he fo	ormer	
	dog cheap' to indicate something of very little value. 2	1		
	nes from the accounting practice of using that colour ink for debts ck for credit. ³ may also come from accounti			
	'ends' or bottoms of the columns for the incomes and expenses we			
he	e same amount, or 'met', showing that more wasn't being spent than was			
	arned. 4comes from prison slang, in which 'rip' means			
	cal', so someone who does this to others is a thief. 5 carently dates back to a 16th century famine when people were so poor			
	t any food they got was eaten immediately so that no one else coul			
. 6	is thought to date from the Great Depression			

VOCAB BOOST!

meaning of the idiom.

(a-d).

Try to find out the literal meaning of idioms to help make them more memorable. Often, although not always, this

meaning has a logical or metaphonical connection to the

5 Read the Vocab boost! box. Then match the idioms and

1 to be born with a silver spoon in your mouth

their literal meanings (1-4) with their actual meanings

Spoons are often given to babies as presents. Silver used

to be an expensive metal and it's probable that richer

became loose.

the 1930s, when hungry Americans lost so much weight that their clothes

9F

Reading

The history of the shopping mall

I can understand a text about the design of shopping malls.

Revision: Student's Book page 102

1 Match the words below with the definitions.

brand commercial consumer endorsement jingle launch logo slogan

- 1 A short song or slogan that is used in TV and radio
- 2 A symbol used by a company to identify its products.
- 3 The act of saying that you support or approve of somebody or something.
- 4 A type of product made by a company with a particular name.
- 5 An event to introduce something new.
- 6 A short phrase that is easy to remember, often used to advertise a product.
- 7 An advertisement that is broadcast on TV or radio.
- 8 A person who buys goods or services. _
- 2 Read the text. Find three ways in which shopping malls try to encourage people to spend their money.

Reading Strategy

Read the missing sentences carefully before you match them with the gaps in the text. Look at the parts of the text before and after each gap, and try to find words that may link them to the sentences, for example synonyms, paraphrases, opposites or pronouns.

- 3 Read the Reading Strategy. Then read the text again. Match sentences A–F with gaps 1–4 in the text. There are two extra sentences.
 - A This took away a major obstacle between shoppers and the brands on sale inside.
 - B Despite that, if you spend a little time looking around the next mall you visit, you'll see that Taubman's ideas are still being put into practice.
 - C However, seldom do shoppers notice that the day seems to last longer in a shopping mall.
 - D The layout of a modern shopping mall is very similar to the layout of those first malls from nearly seventy years ago.
 - E Restaurants and cafés were placed at the end of the malls because they were only used at certain times of the day.
 - F The idea was to create a space that people would feel like spending a whole day in.

THE kings of the shopping mall

It was on 22 March 1954 that the world's first shopping mall, Northland, opened. Built in a suburb of Chicago, USA, the designer of Northland, Victor Gruen, told the press that it was the 'shopping centre of the future'. Gruen was half-right, because although Northland was the world's first purpose-built shopping centre, it was his next design, Southdale in Minnesota, that became the model that architects all over the world would copy. Opened two years after Northland, Southdale was the first shopping centre where the shops were enclosed in one enormous building, and shopping mall architects have followed Gruen's model ever since. !

However, if Victor Gruen invented the mall, businessman Alfred Taubman perfected it. Taubman took Gruen's design and added a few rules to encourage consumers to spend as much money as possible. Taubman decided that shops should only occupy two floors. Furthermore, the escalators to move shoppers between the floors should always be at the two ends of the mall, forcing people to walk past all the shops on a floor. He also insisted on glass safety barriers on the first floor, allowing consumers to easily see the shops above and below them, and on opening up the front of shops completely by removing their big glass windows. 2— Taubman also wanted shoppers to spend as much fime as possible in the malls so they would spend more money. He suggested letting plenty of natural light into them by constructing huge glass ceilings. Taubman also installed artificial lights next to the glass ceilings, so that as daylight faded, the artificial light increased and shoppers were unaware of the passing of time. Holding different events every week and local festivals in the space inside the mall would bring in even more people.³

Today, shopping malls have grown to the size of small towns and contain a lot of leisure facilities such as theme parks, artificial lakes and even ski slopes to attract customers.

4. However, although shopping malls are carefully designed to make consumers part with as much of their money as possible, it is unlikely that they will notice. Many people see a visit to a shopping mall as a leisure activity and that is perhaps Taubman's biggest legacy.

IELTSMatters.com



Speaking

Photo comparison

I can compare photos.

1 Q2.24 Read the task below. Then listen to a student doing the task. Which option does he choose and why?

Compare the photos. Say which of these places is more suitable for a birthday treat for a friend.





2	2.24	Listen again. Tick the phrases below that the
	student	uses for justifying his opinion.

- 1 The reason I believe that is because ...
- 2 The main reason is that ...
- 3 For one thing, ... / Another thing is that ...
- 4 On top of that, ...
- 5 I definitely think that the ... is better, because ...
- 6 For those reasons, I think ...

Speaking Strategy

When performing the task, it is important that you have useful language ready at your disposal. For example:

Introducing opinions In my view, ...

Making additional points Not only that, but ...

Giving examples for instance

Introducing contrasting points However, ...

Gaining time That's an interesting question.

3 2.24 KEY PHRASES Read the Speaking Strategy and listen again. Add the formulaic phrases that you hear to the correct groups below.

Introducing opinions

To my mind, ...

Making additional points

Not only that, but ...

In addition to that, ...

Giving examples

Introducing contrasting points

However....

Gaining time

That's an interesting question.

- 4 Match 1–5 with a–e to make phrases to express a tentative opinion.
 - 1 I don't have any strong ___
 - 2 I'm not sure about ___
 - 3 It could be
 - 4 There might be a case ___
 - 5 Thinking about it, I ____
 - a that. Let me think / see.
 - b argued that ...
 - c opinion about ...
 - d suppose that ...
 - e for arguing that ...
- 5 2.25 Listen to another student answering the examiner's follow-up question. Which of the phrases in exercise 4 does she use?

Compare the photos. Which place would you choose for a day out with a penfriend who is visiting the UK from another country?





6 Read the task above. Spend about a minute preparing your answer.

Your preferred option

Reasons

Which place would you prefer to live in?

7 Read the follow-up question above and write notes. Try not to spend long on preparing your answer.

8 Now do the task using your notes from exercises 6 and 7.



A letter to a newspaper

I can write a letter about solutions to a problem.

Preparation

A newspaper published an article saying that teenagers with part-time jobs spend the extra money wastefully and also get lower school grades due to their jobs. Write a letter to the editor where you express your opinion and suggest ways that part-time work could be beneficial to teenagers.

- 1 Read the task above and the letter opposite. Answer the questions below. Do you agree with the student's reaction?
 - 1 What is the student's reaction to the article?
 - 2 What positive reasons are given for part-time jobs?
 - 3 How many suggestions are made for making part-time work beneficial?

Writing Strategy

Use synonyms and paraphrases to avoid repeating the same words too often, for example: very angry = furious.

- 2 Read the Writing Strategy. Then read the words and phrases below and match them with the highlighted words with similar meanings in the letter.
 - 1 arrive
 - 2 belief/view
 - 3 cut back
 - 4 claimed that
 - 5 presenting
 - 6 keep
 - 7 refused
 - 8 put forward
 - 9 function
 - 10 in answer to
 - 11 giving
 - 12 urgent

Writing Guide

A newspaper recently published an article about teenagers spending all their money on unnecessary consumer goods, blaming their obsession with the latest technology. Write a letter to the editor where you express your opinion about this, and suggest ways that teenagers can be helped to really think about their needs and to buy wisely.



Dear Sir or Madam

I am writing in response to the article about part-time work for teenagers. It stated that working was having a negative effect on teenagers by providing them with too much money and reducing the amount of time they spent studying.

I'd like to say that I cannot agree with the assumption that all teenagers who work are very materialistic and are failing at school. I feel that the article is projecting an unbalanced view of teenagers who work. Personally, I think that working teenagers gain experience of how to operate in the real world. They learn to turn up on time, be responsible, and deal with people. They also learn the value of money. To my mind, these are great benefits. Furthermore, many teenagers are saving for worthwhile things like hobbies or university, rather than wasting their earnings.

However, I am sure it is true that those who work very long hours have less study time, which cannot be good. So, I would like to suggest some ways that part-time work may benefit teenagers without affecting their studies. Firstly, they need to limit the hours they work and not work on too many school evenings. Secondly, they could look for casual jobs like babysitting or dog walking, which can be turned down if schoolwork is pressing. Finally, teenagers could work in the holidays rather than school time.

I believe that these suggestions would help teenagers retain the benefits of extra money from working, without putting their studies at risk.

Yours faithfully

Sophie Bennett

3	Read the task above. Make notes.	
	14	

Your reaction Your reasons Your suggestions .

4 Write your letter to the newspapers using your notes from exercise 3.

CHECK YOUR WORK

Have you ...

covered both elements of the task in your letter?

started and finished your letter correctly?

used synonyms to avoid repetition where possible?

2

3

Review Unit 9

Vocabulary

ocabulary	4 Complete the definitions with words related to advertising.
Complete the sentences with the verbs below. afford knock down rip off shop around snap up splash out 1 Some restaurants try to	1 A l is an image that represents a company. 2 A c is an advert on the radio or the TV. 3 A b is a type of product made by a company. 4 A l is the moment a product is made available to the public for the first time. 5 A s is a memorable phrase often used to draw people's attention to commercial products. 6 A j is a tune that is easy to remember. Mark: /6 5 Complete the responses with the phrases below. Another thing is For one thing For those reasons I definitely think I don't have any On top of that Thinking about it
Mark: /6	A is it better to buy books online or from a bookshop? B '
Complete the sentences with words related to online shopping. I created a w l on a site selling computer games. Before my birthday, I gave it to my parents. 2 It's a good idea to look through the details of your order when you get to the c 3 I'm going to check my b to make sure everything I want to order is in there.	online. C 2 it's better to buy them from a bookshop. 3, you can read the first page to make sure you like the book. 4 that you don't have to wait for it to arrive to start reading it. 5 we need to support bookshops or they might die out. 6, I think it's better to buy books from a bookshop than to buy them online. D 7 strong opinions about that. Mark:/7
4 The great thing about that company is that you can tthe progress of your order. 5 I usually try to order several iat once to save	Grammar
on postage and packing. 6 Most of the online r said the camera wasn't very good, so I decided not to buy it. Mark: /6	Complete the second sentence with emphasis. I 'm just asking for a little more consideration. All I'm asking
ord Skills	2 I cut my foot on a piece of glass. It was a piece of glass
Complete the sentences with money idioms formed from the word in brackets. 1 They'll be until they finish paying for their new house. (hard)	3 Everyone should recycle their waste. What everyone should do
Despite the country's supposed wealth, many of the citizens live (hand)	4 The oil tanker hit a rock. What happened
3 What must it feel like to never have to work and live in [(lap) 4 forgot my phone charger so I had to pay for	5 You only need to take your rubbish home with you. All you need
a new one at the airport. (nose) My sister's a single parent, so she finds it hard to	Mark: /5

__ so that I can

Mark:

6 My bank notifies me if I am _____

make a deposit before I get charged. (red)

Review Unit 9

7	C	omplete the second sentence with emphasis.
	1	I'd love to visit Hong Kong.
		One place Hong Kong.
	2	I can't stand queuing in the supermarket.
		The thing queuing in the supermarket.
	3	You must go to Harrods.
		One shop Harrods.
	4	I spoke to the manager.
		The person the manager.
	5	I feel sorry for sales staff who have to work on Sundays.
		The people sales staff who have to
		work on Sundays.
	6	I avoid buying any product that is tested on animals.
		One thing any product that is tested
		on animals.
		Mark: / 6
3	CI	noose the correct verb forms to complete the sentences.
	1	Being / Been well off, Sebastian's parents could afford to
		send him to a private school.
	2	Purchasing / Purchased online, plane tickets are usually
		cheaper.
	3	Standing / Stood at the checkout, I remembered that I
		needed to buy bread.
	4	Having got / Had got into debt once, Anne has limited the use of her credit card.
	5	The market was full of tourists haggling / haggled for souvenirs.
	6	Selling / Sold in an attractive gift box, this perfume makes
		an excellent present.
		Mark: /6
9	as	omplete the second sentence so that it means the same the first. Use the words below and the correct participle orms. Write four words in each gap.
	al	though before on since
	1	I tried the jeans on and then I bought them.
		, I tried them on.
	2	I'm getting loads of information about courses now that
		I've applied for university.
		, I'm getting loads of
		information about courses.
	3	The product didn't take off despite the fact that it had
		been predicted to succeed.
		, the product didn't take off.
	4	I noticed we hadn't been charged for our drinks when I
		checked the bill.
		, I noticed we hadn't been
		charged for our drinks.

Use of English

10 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words

argue be charge consume deliver notify roll tight 1 We complained about the bill because we'd been

- 2 My neighbours have just bought a Lamborghini. They must __ in it!
- 3 The company hasn't got a tracking system so they can't send ______ to their customers.
- 4 There might be a case for ______ against genetically modified food.
- 5 We had to __ our belts when my dad lost his job.
- 6 These days, ____ __tend to compare prices more before they decide what to buy.
- 7 I stayed in all morning waiting for the didn't arrive.
 - dirt cheap, the flip-flops sold out in no time.

Total: /60

I can ...

Read the statements. Think about your progress and tick one of the boxes.

- = I need more practice. *** = No problem!
- * = I sometimes find this difficult.

	**	***
I can talk about the consumer society.		
I can use sentence structure to create emphasis.		
I can distinguish between fact and opinion.		
I can use participle clauses.		
I can use money idioms.		
I can understand an article about the design of shopping malls.		
I can compare two photos.		
I can write a letter about solutions to a problem.		

Mark:

Exam Skills Trainer

Reading

Strategy

The questions in a multiple-matching task usually use different words to communicate the ideas in the texts. If you find the same words are used in the questions and the texts. it does not mean you have found the right answer.

1 Read the Strategy. Then read the text in exercise 2 and the question below. Skim the text and find the bold words from the question. Why is this paragraph not the right answer? What is the right answer?

In which paragraph does the author mention

- 1 the typical duties performed in this line of work?
- 2 Read the text. Match paragraphs A–C with questions 1–6. Each paragraph matches two questions.

In which paragraph does the author mention ...

- 1 an extra received on top of the wages?
- 2 something that might give away the identity of the worker?
- 3 a trend which has changed employment prospects?
- 4 typical consumer behaviour?
- 5 the difficulty of finding a job in the field? __
- 6 a good reason for doing the job? ___

A secret job in the retail trade

- A I am in a supermarket, doing my best to look like any other shopper browsing the shelves. My mission on this trip is to buy something I fancy from the bakery, which means I'll have to interact with the person at the counter. I'm hoping to pass off the handwritten notes I'm carrying as a shopping list, because no one must know why I am here. I have to keep my identity secret because I am a mystery shopper.
- B My job involves visiting five to ten different stores a day and scoring them on, among other things, their appearance and cleanliness. With the £20 I am given to spend at each store, I purchase the obligatory item that enables me to assess the service I receive at the checkout. Adding the value of my purchase to the £225 I make in a typical day of eight hours of visits and two hours filing reports, I earn more than enough to live on.
- C However, assignments paying as well as mine are becoming few and far between due to the soaring demand in my line of work. Retailers increasingly need to maintain standards so as to offer consumers a quality shopping experience and keep them from turning to the internet. However, to date, there are more than half a million mystery shoppers registered in the UK, making competition for jobs very fierce. Today it isn't only other shoppers I hide my identity from; even my friends and family don't know who I work for.

Listening

Strategy

When you do a multiple-matching task, remember that the information you need may come at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end of what each speaker says.

.

- 3 Read the Strategy. Then read the short extract below. The question to match with the extract is about taking advantage of somebody else's mistake. Where does this information come: at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end of the extract? Underline the relevant part of the paragraph.
- I picked up a great bargain on eBay the last time I bought a smartphone. I was after a Samsung, and I was bidding for one of the older models because I didn't want to fork out for a new one. One day, I made an important discovery. When I wrote the name of the phone in the search bar, a completely different page came up and the model I wanted was much cheaper. What had happened was that I'd spelled 'Samsung' wrong – without the G – which is what the person who'd listed the phone must have done too.
- 4 Q2.26 You will hear four speakers talking about bargains they have purchased. Match sentences A−E with speakers 1–4. There is one extra sentence.

Which speaker ...

- A had a pleasant surprise when they tried something different?
- B paid next to nothing for a second-hand object?
- C saved a lot of money because of a technological error?
- D had to negotiate a price with the seller?
- E was given a bargain as a present?

Speaker 1: ___ Speaker 3: ___ Speaker 2: ___ Speaker 4: ___

Use of English

Strategy

In this task, you may have to use prefixes and suffixes to complete the gaps. Think about the meaning of the text to help you choose the correct form the words. For example, do you need to use a positive (e.g. satisfied, powerful) or a negative (e.g. dissatisfied, powerless) adjective?

5

Exam Skills Trainer

5 Read the Strategy. Then match the groups of words (1–6) with the negative prefixes below.

dis- il- im- in- ir- un-

1 flexible hospitable sensitive

2 __ rational regular relevant

3 educated noticed skilled

4 ___coloured content enchanted
 5 ___mature modest probable

6 __legal legible literate

6 Complete each gap in the text with a word formed from the word in brackets.

Shopping abroad

In many countries, hage	gling is a '	(CULTURE)
tradition more than a w	ay of saving mo	oney. The problem is
that people who aren't	used to it tend	to feel 2
(SECURE) about using t	he technique. B	efore starting out, you
should have shopped ar	ound to give yo	ou an idea of prices, so
as not to be 3	(CHARGE). If you're a beginner,
bear in mind that the s		
more experience than y	ou, so you shou	ld not 5
(ESTIMATE) his or her s	kill. On the othe	er hand, there's no point
in being 6	_ (PUSH), as the	ney are unlikely to offer
you a good price if they	think you're ru	ide. The most
7 (EFFEC	T) strategy is to	pretend that you don't
care about the item if t	he seller refuse	s to lower the price.
Just act as though you'	re not 8	(INTEREST) and
walk away, and the trad	er will probably	come after you.

Speaking

Strategy

When you are comparing and contrasting photographs, you often have to speculate about what is happening in the pictures.

7 Read the Strategy. Then complete the sentences with the words below.

as	like	look	might	perhaps	probably
1	She doe	esn't_		very	happy about the situatio
2			he's be	en workin	g all day.
3	He look	S		if he's go	ping to fall off the ladder.

4 They're ______ going to be late.
5 They look store detectives.

6 She _____ be a professional photographer.

8 Compare and contrast the photos which show different methods of payment. Include the following points:

- · where you think the customers are shopping
- · what you think they have bought
- · why you think they are paying in this way





9 In pairs, discuss questions 1 and 2 below. Use evidence from the photos in your discussion, if possible.

- 1 What are the advantages and disadvantages of using this method of payment?
- 2 How do you think customers will pay for their shopping in the future?

Writing

Strategy

When the task requires you to suggest solutions to a problem, do not only list your ideas or suggestions, but explain how each of them can help solve the problem.

10 Match the sentence halves to complete the suggestions.

I would like to suggest some ways of encouraging people to buy eco-friendly products.

- 1 Firstly, green products should be cheaper. This way ____
- Secondly, they must be advertised on TV. Not only will it ___
 Finally, eco-friendly goods ought to be of very high quality. If they were.
- A their owners and users would recommend them to their friends and neighbours.
- B people will buy more of them for less money.
- C encourage people to get them, but having and using them will become fashionable.

11 Read the task below and write your letter.

A magazine has recently published an article about the role of money in our lives. Its author claims that the richer we become, the less we care about other people. Write a letter to the editor where you express your opinion, and suggest ways in which people with higher incomes can contribute more to society.

Cumulative Review 1 (Units I-1)

Listening

- 1 2.27 Listen to four speakers talking about having their photo in a newspaper or a magazine. Match speakers 1–4 with sentences A–E. There is one extra sentence.
 - A He/She was critical of the person who took the photo.
 - B He/She was disappointed about the way the photo had turned out.
 - C He/She was indifferent about having the photo taken.
 - D He/She was enthusiastic about posing for photos.
 - E He/She was impressed with the photographer.

Speaking

- 2 Work in pairs. Look at the photo below and answer the questions.
 - 1 How do you think the person is feeling?
 - 2 Do you think parents should always be invited to ceremonies at school?
 - 3 Talk about a school ceremony that you have attended and what happened.





Reading

- 3 Read the text on the next page and choose the correct answers.
 - 1 Since 1970, the Bank of England has been printing banknotes featuring
 - a kings and queens on the back.
 - b famous people from the past on the back.
 - c fictional characters on the back.
 - d current celebrities on the back.
 - 2 Caroline Criado-Perez and her supporters were protesting because
 - a they didn't think Winston Churchill should replace Elizabeth Fry.
 - b they wanted more representatives from English literature on the banknotes.
 - c they didn't want all of the notes to feature men.
 - d they thought women should be represented on more than one banknote.
 - 3 Caroline Criado-Perez closed one of her social media accounts because
 - a she was receiving too many messages.
 - **b** she was being harassed by her opponents.
 - c she was being stalked by one of her supporters.
 - $\boldsymbol{d}\,$ she was resigning from the campaign.
 - 4 The new selection process for future banknote characters will be
 - a more focused on the arts.
 - b quicker to respond to criticism.
 - c more representative of women.
 - d more democratic than before
 - 5 The portrait of Jane Austen on the new £10 note
 - a is based on a picture by her sister.
 - **b** was painted by a close relative.
 - c was drawn by her brother.
 - d is taken from one of the writer's novels.

Cumulative Review 1 (Units I-1)

Finding the right face

You'd think it would be quite straightforward to choose a historical figure to include on a banknote, wouldn't you? Of course, the current monarch needs to be on the front of the note; the problem is who should appear on the back. Back in 1970, when the Bank of England began featuring past celebrities on its £5, £10, £20 and £50 notes, nobody used to question the choices. But that changed in 2013, when it was announced that the £10 note was going to be redesigned. Just before this announcement, former British Prime Minister

Winston Churchill had been chosen to replace prison reformer Elizabeth Fry on the new £5 note. The fact that there were now no women on the back of the banknotes made a woman the logical choice for the £10 note. Feminist activist Caroline Criado-Perez led a campaign to put pressure on the Bank of England to choose the novelist Jane Austen for the note. Criado-Perez and her supporters organised protests, sent out an online petition - signed by 35,000 people - and threatened legal action if their demands were not met.

This was only the start of the trouble, however. On the day the Bank of England announced that the new £10 note would. indeed, feature the author, social media sites were flooded with angry comments. There were attacks on the Bank of England for being too cautious in their choice, attacks on Jane Austen for being old-fashioned and, worse still, personal attacks on Criado-Perez and her supporters for promoting the choice of a woman. When she began to receive death threats, the activist closed her Twitter account.

In response to the incident, the Bank of England announced that it would review the selection process in order to avoid such ugly reactions in future. Since then, a special committee has been set up to deal with the process. From now on, whenever a banknote has to be changed, the committee will choose a particular field, for example the visual arts, and the public will have two months to send in ideas. After that, a shortlist of candidates will be compiled and the governor of the Bank of England will choose a character from the list.

Meanwhile, plans for the Jane Austen banknote are going ahead. The new design features a portrait of the author, adapted from a sketch by her sister, Cassandra. In the centre of the note are the author's writing table and an image of her brother's house, which was the inspiration for a number of novels. There is also an illustration of one of Jane's characters. Elizabeth Bennet, and a quotation from one of her books. It can only be hoped that the final banknote meets with less opposition than its announcement did.

Grammar and vocabulary

4 Choose the correct answers (a-c).

Joseph Pulitzer: the legend lives on

You may well have heard of the Pulitzer Prizes for journalism and the arts, but what do you know about the man behind them? Born in Makó, Hungary, in 1847, Joseph Pulitzer was obsessed 1 the military and tried several times the army. In 1864, he emigrated to the USA to become a soldier in the Civil War, and when it was over, he settled in St Louis, Missouri. He 3 __ there for long when he got a job as a reporter with a small German newspaper. Joseph was hard-working and ambitious, and he 4_ work for sixteen hours a day most days. He bought newspapers and sold them at a profit. By 1883, he 5_ a very wealthy man and he could afford 6_ the New York World, a very prestigious newspaper. His new style of investigative journalism made the paper a success, although it also got him into trouble. In 1909, he was sued 7__ after exposing an illegal payment by government officials. In the end, the case was dropped, but by then, Joseph was very ill. He was blind, depressed and extremely sensitive 8__, so he used 9__ his paper from a private office on his yacht. This is where he 10__ in 1911, leaving two million dollars to Columbia University in his will to found the first School of Journalism and establish the Pulitzer Prizes.

1	-	about	L	of	_	with
	d	about	D	01	C	WILII
2	a	join	b	to join	C	joining
3	a	didn't live	b	wasn't living	c	hadn't been living
4	a	did	b	had	C	would
5	a	had become	b	did become	c	had been becoming
6	a	purchase	b	to purchase	c	purchasing
7	a	for libel	b	at libel	C	to libel
8	a	at noise	b	to noise	c	with noise
9	a	to manage	b	managing	c	to managing
10	а	passed away	h	passed by	c	passed off

Writing

- 5 A newspaper has published an article asking which person of historical significance from your country should appear on the next issue of a banknote. Write a letter to the editor in which you:
 - recommend who should appear on the banknote.
 - · explain the reasons for your choice.
 - · describe a remarkable event in the life of your chosen
 - · suggest a place, an activity and an object that illustrate the life of your chosen person.

Cumulative Review 2 (Units I-3)

Listening

1 2.28 Listen and choose the correct answers (a-c).

- 1 Listen to the conversation. Why does the woman suggest going to the festival by coach?
 - a It's the most convenient way to go.
 - b It's the cheapest way to go.
 - c It's the most reliable way to go.
- 2 Listen to the speaker. What is his intention?
 - a To explain how to get tickets for a festival.
 - b To describe one of the best festivals in the UK.
 - c To persuade people to go to a festival.
- 3 Listen to the interview. How does the volunteer feel about his job?
 - a He's overwhelmed by the quantity of rubbish.
 - b He's proud of his group's contribution.
 - c He's disappointed by the lack of co-operation.
- 4 Listen to the news report. Which is the best headline?
 - a GLASTONBURY WEATHER BETTER THAN EVER
 - **b** FESTIVAL RAINED OFF YET AGAIN
 - c REVELLERS SET FOR SUNSHINE AND SHOWERS
- 5 Listen to the conversation. What is the mother's attitude?
- a She's worried about her son staying in a tent.
- b She's resigned to the fact her son is going to the festival.
- c She's annoyed that her son already has a ticket.

Speaking

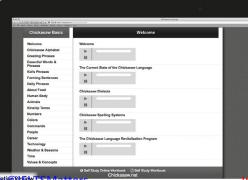
2 Work in pairs. A British exchange student is coming to stay with you when an important festival is on and has asked what happens during the event. Talk with him/her about the topics below.

accommodation clothes food and drink what to see

Reading

- 3 Read the article. Match sentences A-G with gaps 1-5 in the article. There are two extra sentences.
 - A But others have continued, like the role of women as the head of the family and the community.
 - B Then, there's a website for children where they can learn more about Chickasaw history, people, culture and language through interactive games and activities.
 - C The use of new technologies and dynamic business strategies in a global market are also encouraged.
 - D She was the last remaining monolingual speaker of the Chickasaw language.
 - E The study of the arts and humanities is necessary to the success of the Chickasaw Nation.
 - F And if history is anything to go by, he isn't wrong.
 - G This led to the number of native speakers falling from around 3,000 in the 1960s to fewer than seventy today.

Using modern technology to preserve an ancient language



Monday 30 December 2013 was a tragic day for the people of the Chickasaw Nation. It was the day on which a 93-year-old member of the tribe called Emily Johnson Dickerson passed away. But Emily wasn't just any old member of the tribe. 1__ Through her death, the tribe lost not only a beloved member of their extended family. but also a valuable source of knowledge about their language and culture.

Cumulative Review 2 (Units I-3)

The Chickasaw Nation is made up of around 57,000 people, most of whom live in the thirteen areas of Oklahoma, USA, that were once designated 'Indian Territory'. Their land is largely rural, but much of their way of life is modern – they use mobile phones, drive cars and have access to the internet. Some of the traditional Chickasaw customs have died out, such as native folk medicine. ² _ The Chickasaw people are determined that their language should also continue.

There are currently 175 Native American languages spoken in the USA, but fewer than twenty are expected to survive the next one hundred years. The language of the Chickasaws, known as 'Chikashshanompa', has been in existence for well over three thousand years, but it is now in danger of disappearing. Young Chickasaws sent to government boarding schools in the past were discouraged from speaking their language and were obliged to learn English to negotiate with people outside the tribe. ³

___ Which is where the Chickasaw Language Revitalisation Programme comes in.

The aim of the programme is to keep the culture, language and oral traditions of the tribe alive, and it is using cutting-edge technology to do this. First, there is Chickasaw TV, an online network with a channel dedicated to learning the Chickasaw language through lessons, songs, games and stories. ⁴— But the programme's most remarkable achievement is its app: Chickasaw Language Basics. The app features hundreds of Chickasaw words, phrases, songs and videos, and it is the first of its kind to be developed by a tribe or a nation.

According to Joseph Hinson, director of the Department of Chickasaw Language, the Chickasaw are 'a pretty hard-headed, persistent people.' ⁵. The fifty-thousand-year-old indigenous Native American tribe has survived the Conquistadores, numerous wars with Europeans, the American Civil War, and compulsory removal from their native lands... and they're still here. One can only hope that the massive effort the tribe is putting into preserving their language succeeds, so that Chikashshanompa is not lost to the world forever.

Grammar and vocabulary

4 Read the text and choose the correct answers (a-c).

Don't stand so close to me

Researchers at the department of neuroscience at University College London 1 the limits of personal space. This is the area around a person which determines whether he or she is comfortable with the closeness of another person or whether the distance is causing them to feel 2___. Fifteen volunteers aged between twenty and thirty-seven chose in the study, which involved receiving an electric shock to the hand. The volunteers 4__ hold their hands at different distances from their face in order to receive the shock. and their reaction to it was measured by the scientists. The measurements were taken from the volunteers' eve movements, and in particular, how often they blinked. The more they blinked, 5__ of a threat they felt the shock was to their face. The scientists 6__ that the personal space of the volunteers appeared to have an abrupt boundary when they felt threatened, rather than having a gradual increase. The boundary varied among individuals, but it was generally between twenty and forty centimetres from their face. A spokesperson from the university said it is possible that the findings 7 be useful for helping police and other emergency personnel to assess threats 8___

Personal space is thought to be a cultural issue because it is seen as being *__ important in other countries, such as China and India. The spokesperson said researchers hoped to study subjects from other countries soon to understand *__ the differences between cultures.

1	а	have studied	b	studied	c	have been studying
2	a	on edge	b	at edge	c	in edge
3	a	take part	b	to take part	c	taking part
4	a	must	b	had to	c	should
5	a	the more	b	more	c	the most
6	a	had found	b	found	c	had been
						finding
7	a	could	b	can't	C	must
8	a	more accurately	b	most accurately	c	the most
						accurately
9	a	least	b	most	c	less
10	а	hest	h	well	c	hetter

Writing

5 There are six thousand languages in the world, but linguists fear that 50% of them will become extinct within the next century. Write an essay in which you present the advantages and disadvantages of preserving endangered languages.

Cumulative Review 3 (Units I-5)

Listening

- 1 2.29 Listen to a radio programme about therapy dogs. Choose the correct answer.
 - 1 Why does the presenter use the quote about animals at the start of the programme?
 - a To show how affectionate they are.
 - b To explain how considerate they are.
 - c To illustrate how ignorant they are.
 - d To emphasise how trusting they are.
 - 2 According to Freya Wilcox, Alzheimer's patients are generally
 - a easy-going.
 - b insecure.
 - c thick-skinned.
 - 3 During the therapy dogs' visits, the patients tend to be
 - a more sympathetic.
 - b hungrier.
 - c more upbeat.
 - d more single-minded.
 - 4 To be a therapy dog, an animal must
 - a have the right personality.
 - b know a lot of people.
 - c be wary of strange noises.
 - d understand body language.
 - 5 Why do the dogs go home at night?
 - a In order to spend some time with their trainers.
 - b So as not to catch an illness from the patients. c To be clean and rested for the next day's work.
 - d So that they don't disturb the patients.

Speaking

2 Work in pairs. You want to give an elderly relative a pet to keep him or her company. Say which of these pets you would choose and why. Say why you are rejecting the other option.



Reading

3 Match texts A-C with questions 1-6 below. Some texts match with more than one question.

Which meeting ...

- 1 was held in order for an important question to be
- 2 lasted for less than an hour?
- 3 involved people of different nationalities?
- 4 was organised privately?
- 5 involved the exchange of gifts?
- 6 resulted in a long-term association between the participants?



resulted in one of the most famous automobile partnerships in history. After purchasing a car whose

performance he was dissatisfied with, Frederick Henry Royce had succeeded in creating his own model that gave the occupants a quieter and smoother ride. One of these vehicles was purchased by Royce's colleague Henry Edmunds, who was friends with a car dealer in London called Charles Stewart Rolls. Edmunds showed Rolls his new car and arranged for Rolls and Royce to meet over lunch at the Midland Hotel in Manchester. The two men began doing business together, and on 15 March 1906, Rolls-Royce Limited was born. Unfortunately, the partnership ended rather abruptly four years later when Rolls was killed in a plane crash. However, the company continued, and the Rolls-Royce went on to become arguably one of the best cars in the world.

Cumulative Review 3 (Units I-5)



On 17 July 1975, a meeting occurred that a few years earlier would have been unthinkable. On that day, US astronaut Thomas Stafford and Russian cosmonaut Alexei Leonov exchanged the first international handshake in space. The Apollo-Sovuz Test Project, named after the two spacecraft involved, was a joint venture organised by the US and Soviet governments to demonstrate the improved relations between the two nations. The Apollo and the Soyuz were launched on 15 July within seven and a half hours of each other, and they met over France, where the two spacecraft joined. They stayed connected for nearly two days, long enough for the three Americans and two Soviets to visit each other's ships, conduct experiments together, share meals and converse in each other's languages. One of the gifts they exchanged was a bag of tree seeds which were later planted in the two countries.

On 27 March 1997, a rather awkward meeting took place before the press in a Tennessee state prison hospital. The participants were two men: Dexter King, son of the murdered civil rights activist Martin Luther King, and James Earl Ray, the man who had been convicted of the assassination. King was 36 when the meeting happened, and Ray was 69 and very sick - he had to be taken to the meeting room in a wheelchair. During the 25 minutes the two men spent together, King asked Ray if he had killed King's father. Ray, who confessed to the killing at the

> his confession, replied that he hadn't, to which King responded, 'I believe you.' Whether Ray was the killer or the murder was a government conspiracy will always remain a mystery because

> > Ray died of liver

in prison.

disease a year later

time of his arrest, but then withdrew

Grammar and vocabulary

4 Choose the correct answers (a-c).

HOW TO REPAIR a friendship

friendships have wobbly moments, and it's quite normal for friends to fall out every now and then. The important thing is knowing what to do if, or when, this and you have an argument. In general, the sooner you try to repair the friendship, 3___, though you should not approach your friend until you have both had time to calm down. Under no circumstances

your friend immediately afterwards and demand to speak to them. Bear in mind that he or she will

just as hurt and offended as you are. Once you've managed to cool off, find somewhere quiet to sit down and think about how you're going to repair the friendship. A face-to-face meeting is always the best, although there's a danger your friend might

your offer to speak at first. However, it's very unlikely that they will stop speaking to you 7___, so it's worth trying again on another occasion. When you start the conversation, you need to apologise for the way you have acted, even if you weren't the person

. There's no point in lecturing your friend 9_ their behaviour as this approach won't work. A useful way to continue is to 10__ a good memory to share with your friend. Once you find yourselves on common ground, the conversation should flow more easily, and you'll be able to talk about whatever it is that made you fall out in the first place.

а	All	b	All the	c	Each of
a	happen	b	happens	c	will happen
a	best	b	better	c	the better
a	you should call	b	call you	c	should you call
a	be feeling	b	feeling	c	have felt
a	turn away	b	turn down	C	turn off

b for good 8 a at fault b by mistake c in doubt 9 a about b for c in 10 a bring about b bring in c bring up

Writing

7 a at last

2

5 Some people say that you can't be friends with a person you hardly ever see. Write an essay in which you give your opinion of this view and show how a friendship of yours illustrates this.

c in effect

Cumulative Review 4 (Units I-7)

Listening

2.30 Listen to a radio programme about the Ponzi scheme. Decide if the sentences are true (T) or false (F).

- A Ponzi scheme is a way of deceiving investors.
- 2 The first ever Ponzi scheme was run by Charles Ponzi.
- 3 Ponzi set up his scheme as soon as he arrived in the USA.
- 4 The scheme involved the buying and exchanging of International Reply Coupons.
- 5 Ponzi's scheme was illegal right from the start.
- 6 At the height of the scheme, Ponzi was making a quarter of a million dollars a day.
- 7 Ponzi's investors wanted to leave the scheme when the police began investigating his company.
- 8 Ponzi was sent back to the country of his birth on his release from prison.

Speaking

- 2 Work in pairs. You've lost your school bag containing all your books. You think you left it on the train. Report the loss to the train company. In the conversation, discuss the following points:
 - 1 the circumstances of losing the bag
 - 2 a description of the bag
 - 3 what was in the bag
 - 4 what will happen next

Reading

- 3 Read the text below and choose the correct answers.
 - 1 The most shocking thing about Amina Arraf is that
 - a she disappeared and remains missing.
 - b she wasn't a real person.
 - c she wasn't afraid to express her views online.
 - d she was very close to an American man.

Who are you?

On 6 June 2011, the media reported the kidnapping of a female Syrian—American blogger called Amina Arraf. Regarded as a daring political rebel, the 35-year-old had become popular for her blogs protesting about the lack of freedom in Syria, where she was supposedly living at the time. Yet only two days after her disappearance, it was discovered that Amina had never existed at all. She was a fictional character created by a forty-year-old American man called Tom MacMaster, a PhD Student at the University of Edinburgh.

MacMaster's invention of the blogger is an example of sock puppetry: the use of false identities to deceive others. The false identity is known as a sock puppet, and its creator, a puppet master. MacMaster created Amina to enable him to express his strong views on Middle-Eastern affairs without offending other Americans, who may not have approved. Writing as Amina Arraf gave him the authority to be able to say what he wanted to. But this is not the only reason for using sock puppetry.

At the turn of the millennium, an American woman named Debbie Swenson created the fictional character Kaycee Nicole, a teenage girl suffering from terminal cancer. Her blog, Living Colours, described in detail Kaycee's fight for survival, and it attracted millions of readers. When Kaycee 'died' on 14 May 2001, her fans were devastated. But their distress turned to anger when they discovered that Kaycee was not a real person. The character had been developed by Ms Swenson to get the attention and sympathy she craved.

Cumulative Review 4 (Units I-7)

- 2 The reason why Tom MacMaster blogged under a false identity was
 - **a** to find out what his fellow countrymen and women thought.
 - b to deceive people into taking sides with the USA.
 - c to appeal to both men and women in the Middle East.d to give credibility to his radical ideas.
- 3 Debbie Swenson created Kaycee Nicole because
 - a she enjoyed sharing her medical knowledge.
 - b she wanted advice on how to treat her daughter's illness.
 - c she needed to feel popular with other people.
- d she felt like showing her support for cancer sufferers.
- 4 The sock puppet Mary Rosh was used by John Lott
 - a to give him the voice of authority.
 - b to criticise his opponents.
 - c to make out that he was married.
 - d to encourage others to look on his work favourably.
- 5 The writer of the article concludes that
 - a everybody should be wary of people they come across online
 - **b** the police should create more sock puppets to combat
 - c social media sites are safer than they used to be.
 - **d** terrorists pose a bigger threat on the internet than they do in real life.

While Amina and Kaycee were used as a means to meet the needs of their creators, other identities have been invented to make a profit. American gun advocate John Lott made up a fake student, Mary Rosh, to defend his writing online and give him positive reviews. Mystery writer RI Ellory went further and fabricated a whole team of sock puppets, not only to praise his own books, but also to criticise those of his rivals. Well-respected British historian Orlando Figes lost face completely when he had to publicly apologies for doing the same.

Yet none of these stories can compete with the large-scale sock puppetry in existence today. It is understood that the New York City Police Department has several false identities hanging out on social media sites in order to catch criminals. The US military is said to have a number of sock puppets online searching for potential terrorists. While most of us are unlikely to have dealings with these organisations, the stories of Amina, Kaycee and the fake reviewers are much closer to home. It is clear that the internet is a minefield today and we all have to step very carefully in order not to get hurt.

Grammar and vocabulary

4 Choose the correct answers (a-c).

Don't be deceived!

Celebrated in many countries on 1 April, April Fools Day is a day on which people are encouraged 1 practical jokes on their friends and family. The press often joins in the fun by 2 fictional stories to print on the day. One of the most extensive April Fools stories ever published was a seven-page supplement about a fictional island nation that appeared in the Guardian newspaper back in 1977. The feature was as a serious report celebrating the tenth anniversary of the nation's independence. The idea was conceived by the Guardian's special reports team, one of whom suggested the nation 'San Serriffe', after the sans-serif printing style of letters used in newspapers. In fact, the team the readers' lack of knowledge in publishing by using these words as names for all the places mentioned in the supplement. At the time, computers had not vet entered the home, so most readers had never heard them before and were completely 6 by the report. Those who were familiar with the words realised immediately that the feature was a joke and 7_ to the editor. The newspaper received a number of complaints from travel agencies, however, for that San Serriffe was a tourist destination. It appears that some of their customers believed in the existence the islands and wanted to see them for themselves. Apparently, several people had called in to ask how much 10_ to book a holiday there.

1	a	play	b	playing	C	to play
2	a	bringing up	b	making up	c	turning up
3	a	let on	b	owned up	C	passed off
4	a	call	b	calling	C	to call
5	a	played on	b	set up	C	zoomed in
6	a	got over	b	put down	c	taken in
7	a	gave a thumbs up	b	pursed their lips	c	raised their eyebrows
8	a	asking out	b	going out	c	making out
9	a	of	b	for	C	by
10	a	does it cost	b	it cost	C	did it cost

Writing

5 You have read an article about the dangers of using social media. Write an article for your school website about the risks associated with using social media and propose ways of persuading young people to use it responsibly.

Cumulative Review 5 (Units I-9)

Listening

- 1 Q 2.31 Listen to four speakers talking about their favourite TV advertisement. Match speakers 1-4 with sentences A-E. There is one extra sentence
 - A He/She recognises a familiar scene in the ad.
 - B He/She admires the technique used to make the ad.
 - C He/She praises the clever slogan at the end of the ad.
 - D He/She enjoys seeing somebody made happy in the ad. E He/She empathises with one of the characters in the ad.

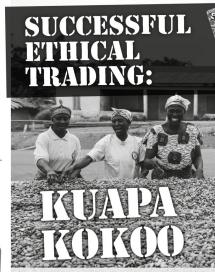
Speaking

2 You want to advertise a fundraising event your school is holding. Say which of these places is the best for advertising the event and why. Say why you are rejecting the other option.



Reading

- 3 Read the article. Match sentences A-G with gaps 1-5 in the article. There are two extra sentences.
 - A As a result, Kuapa Kokoo received only half of the cocoa they had paid for and had no money left to buy more.
 - B The income they received from cocoa was vital for paying for school fees and medical costs.
 - C Now the company comprises around 85,000 small-scale farmers, and it has its own chocolate brand, Divine.
 - D Then, they replaced all of the weighing scales to ensure that they hadn't been fixed to give the farmers a lower price.
 - E This time, they received a much larger loan to work with and the banks were back to normal, so the farmers could cash their cheaues.
 - F As the weeks progressed, recorders began to hire their own private trucks, taking on more responsibility.
 - G Genuinely concerned about poorer farmers, he recruited experienced cocoa people, who he knew and trusted, and found an office for the company in the city of Kumasi.



ost people in the cocoa business used to laugh at the idea that farmers could have their own company. That was before the cocoa farmers' co-operative Kuapa Kokoo literally 'best farmer cocoa' - was established in Ghana in 1993. 1_ It is one of the most successful members of the fair trade group, the movement that promotes ethical trading. But the situation hasn't always been like this.

International development agencies became aware of the need for a company protecting small farmers in Ghana when the government was obliged to hand over control of the cocoa trade to private companies. Kuapa Kokoo was set up under the management of Nana Frimpong, who was an engineer and a farmer, and also a friend of the Ghanaian President. 2 Kuapa Kokoo now had a base and a team

The first challenge facing the new company was corruption, which the management refused to tolerate. First, they made contact with independent recorders in each village - that is, the people who manage the relationship with the farmers and take the cocoa to be weighed.

Finally, they trained the recorders to the same level as the government's quality control officers,

Cumulative Review 5 (Units I-9)



who had previously looked down on them and declared the produce low quality unless they were given a 'tip'. It looked as if Kuapa Kokoo was ready to do business.

The next problem was money - or lack of it. The cheques the company had been planning to pay the farmers with could not be exchanged for cash because the regional banks had run out of banknotes. So the Kuapa management had to withdraw from the bank in Ghanaian currency most of the £100,000 loan they had been given. Because of the competitive trading environment in the villages at the time, there was much confusion over the cocoa that had been promised to each company. 4 The first season had been an absolute disaster.

Fortunately, the company had the support of the agencies to try again the following year. 5__ The company's new 'Pick Up and Pay' system, by which the recorders from each village would collect the cocoa and receive payment for it every two weeks, was a success. At the end of the second season, Kuapa Kokoo was officially identified as the most efficient of the new cocoa companies. Since then, it has never looked back.

Grammar and vocabulary

4 Choose the correct answers (a-c).

Whataloadofrubbishi Freeganism is the practice of reusing things 1 by other

people. Freegans may or may not be able to 2

things themselves, but that really isn't the point. The reason they look for things to recycle is to protest 3 the consumer society we live in and also to be more ecological. 4 concerns freegans the most is the quantity of food and drink that is wasted each year, which amounts to around 4.2 million tonnes in the UK alone. This figure is likely to rise people start to pay more attention to the purchases they make. Supermarket food has often been flown by plane, driven in trucks and packaged in unnecessary plastic before it appears on the shelves. The less food we have to produce. the 6 natural resources we will use up. Not surprisingly. supermarkets would prefer freegans 7_ through their bins, which are usually located on private land. For this reason, police cars often 8 outside to make sure there is no one around. If a police officer does find someone looking for

food, he or she will usually 9 and send them on their way. For freegans, however, the real crime is throwing away so

much food and drink in the first place. They say that if the

unwanted products 10 properly, then nobody would have

to go through supermarket bins.

1 a to discard **b** discarded c discarding 2 a afford c haggle **b** budget 3 a against b for c with 4 a All b It c What 5 a even if **b** supposing c unless 6 a fewer b less c little 7 a don't go b not going c not to go 8 a come across **b** pull up c stop over b tell off them 9 a put them off c tell them off 10 a are distributed **b** were distributed c would be

Writing

5 A newspaper recently published an article about the fair trade movement suggesting that young people don't usually buy fair trade products. Write a letter to the editor where you express your opinion about this, suggesting ways of making these products more accessible to young people.

distributed



Writing Bank

For and against essay

Many young adults choose to leave their parents' home in order to share a house with friends. Write an essay in which you present arguments for and against this course of action.

In the past, most people lived with their parents until they got married. But in the modern world, it is more common to leave home and share accommodation with friends. This choice has both positive and negative aspects.

There are several advantages to sharing with friends. Firstly, it gives you the opportunity to spend time with your friends and to build strong relationships with them. Secondly, it allows you to develop some of the practical skills that you will need as an independent adult. For instance, you will learn how to manage household bills, how to shop and cook, and so on. And thirdly, it makes living in your own home more affordable, and the more people who share, the more cost-effective it is. For instance, a shared house for six people is far cheaper than two houses for three people.

On the other hand, sharing a home has its disadvantages. Sharing a house can often cause disagreements. For instance, housemates often argue about household chores. What is more, it can be difficult to have time alone when you need it. And finally, the houses which young people share are sometimes in poor condition and landlords are not always good at repairing appliances when they break down.

Although sharing a house with other young people is not always easy, the advantages definitely outweigh the problems. It is certainly something I would like to do in a few years' time.

- The first paragraph should be the introduction. Include a thesis statement, which summarises the main issue.
- The second paragraph should focus on the advantages. Include at least two arguments, if possible.
- Give examples where appropriate, introduced by phrases like For example, ... or For instance, ...
- The third paragraph should focus on the disadvantages. Include at least two arguments, if possible.
- Begin the third paragraph with a phrase like On the other hand, ... or However, ... to express contrast with statements in the previous paragraph.
- The fourth paragraph should be the conclusion. State your own opinion and decide whether the arguments for outweigh the arguments against the thesis statement, or the other way around.

Article

According to the media, young people today are more interested in protests than in traditional party politics. Write an article for your local newspaper in which you give possible reasons for this preference and describe a protest which you personally witnessed or took part in.

- · Choose a good title for your article.
- Start your article by getting the reader's attention. You can begin with a direct question or with a deliberately provocative statement.
- Include occasional questions where appropriate to make your style more engaging.
- Write in a simple, clear style that is appropriate to the publication (newspaper, magazine, etc.). Avoid language that is too formal or too colloquial.
- Make sure you cover all parts of the task. It is usually a good idea to put them in separate paragraphs.

AN APPETITE FOR ACTIVISM

Young people today only care about social media, music and fashion — or at least, that's the impression you get from the media. But in fact, this description is far from the truth. Young people are interested in important issues and want to make the world a better place. But they prefer direct action to party politics. What are the reasons for this?

The first reason is the simplest: most teenagers are still too young to vote, so "why should they take an interest in party politics? But there are other actions" too. When young people look at traditional politics, they don't find answers to the questions that are most important to them. How can we put an end to poverty? How can we save the world from pollution and global warming? But there are other organisations that address these topics directly. They arrange protests and other forms of activism. What is more, they use social media and the internet to publicise their campaigns, so it is easy for young people to find out about them.

Last month, lattended a protest against the building of a new retail park. Many of the protestors were under the age of twenty, We met near the proposed construction site and then marched into town, finishing outside the town hall. We stayed there all afternoon, giving out leaflets and talking to members of the public. It was a very successful protest and we even appeared on the local TV news.



Writing Bank

Opinion essay

Many people believe that it is to too late to reverse the harm which humans have done to the planet. Write an essay in which you present your opinion on this topic and suggest how people could limit further damage to the environment.

- · Write in an appropriately formal style, avoiding colloquial words and expressions.
- · The first paragraph should be an introduction. Include your thesis statement, which is a summary of your opinion on the issue.
- The second paragraph should focus on the first part of the task (presenting your opinion).
- Use appropriate linking words or phrases like Additionally, ... or However, ... to connect your ideas in a logical way.
- Give examples where appropriate, introduced by phrases like For example, ..., For instance, ... and such as
- The third paragraph should focus on the second part of the task (making suggestions).
- The fourth paragraph should be the conclusion. Restate your opinion from paragraph 1, but do not repeat it word for word.

Global warming threatens to change the planet's climate forever and make large areas of it uninhabitable. In my opinion. it is impossible to reverse all of this damage, but we can certainly make a positive difference by changing our behaviour.

pollution. For example, factories and car engines are far cleaner than they were fifty years ago. Additionally some products that harm the atmosphere, such as aerosols that contain dangerous chemicals, are no longer available. However, some forms of pollution are more difficult to tackle. Plastic waste will remain in the environment for thousands of years. emissions, nobody is certain whether this will be enough to stop global warming. But it is important to remain positive and do everything we can to prevent further damage to our planet.

It is perfectly possible for individuals to limit their own impact by switching off lights, computers and other electrical appliances when they are not using them. As far as possible, they should avoid buying products with plastic packaging and drink water from a reusable bottle.

In conclusion, I would say that we should all do what we can to prevent more damage to our environment. However, only time will tell whether this is enough to reverse the harm that has

Formal letter (complaint)

You and your family recently celebrated a special occasion in a small hotel, but were unhappy with the experience. Write a letter of complaint to the hotel manager in which you describe what went wrong and suggest how the hotel could improve its service to customers.

Dear Sir or Madam.

I am writing to complain about a recent stay at the White Deer Hotel in Broadford between 8 and 10 May. The holiday had been arranged to celebrate my grandfather's 75th birthday and involved twelve family members. Unfortunately, the service we received from your hotel was completely inadequate and prevented us from enjoying what should have been a very special occasion.

Our problems began as soon as we arrived. The check-in process took more than an hour and it appeared the hotel was not expecting us, even though I had phoned the week before to confirm our reservation. After that, things went from bad to worse. For example, we had asked that my grandparents be given a superior double room. In fact, they were given a standard room overlooking the car park at the back of the hotel. When we complained, we were told that the hotel was full and a change of rooms was impossible.

May I suggest that in future the hotel makes better preparations for special events of this kind? You should make guests feel welcome from the moment they arrive. I also believe that your check-in procedure needs to be improved. For example, at busy times, more than one receptionist should be at the desk. I expect to receive an explanation for our unsatisfactory treatment and would appreciate an offer of compensation. I look forward to your reply.

- · If you do not know the name of the person you are writing to, begin with Dear Sir or Madam.
- · Begin your letter by saying why you are writing.
- Write in an appropriately formal style, avoiding colloquial words and expressions.
- · The next paragraph should focus on the first part of the task (describing the situation). Remember to include details and examples.
- · The following paragraph should focus on the second part of the task (making suggestions).
- · End the main part of the letter by stating clearly what you expect to happen next.
- If the letter began with Dear Sir or Madam, it should end Yours faithfully, and your signature. (However, you end with Yours sincerely, before your signature if you addressed the recipient by name at the start.)

Yours faithfully M Wright Mark Wright

Functions Bank

Speculating and deducing

I can't be sure, but ... (1G)

It looks like some kind of ... or maybe a ... (1G)

It looks to me like a ... of some kind. (1G)

It's / There's a sort of ... (1G)

It's / They're most likely a ... or something like that. (1G)

I'd say that ... (1G)

He's yawning, so he must be tired or bored. (5G)

She's laughing, so she can't be sad. (5G)

He may / might / could be lonely. (5G)

It looks as if ... (5G)

The photo appears to show (a canteen). (5G)

She looks like a (nice person). (5G)

Judging by (their expressions), I'd say that ... (5G)

I can't be certain, but ... (5G)

I might be wrong, but ... (5G)

The boy seems to be (writing something). (5G)

Being diplomatic

Can I have a word with you about ... ? (2G)

Well, it's just that ... (2G)

What did you have in mind? (2G)

I thought perhaps we could ... (2G)

You must feel that ... (2G)

So, how can we resolve this? (2G)

I didn't want to bring it up, but ... (2G)

You should have said something earlier. (2G)

And could we possibly agree on ... ? (2G)

Presenting one side of the argument

The first / second advantage ... (2H)

It can be argued that ... (2H)

No one can deny that ... (2H)

On the one hand, ... (2H)

It is also true that ... (2H)

Furthermore, / Moreover, ... (2H)

Some people claim / believe that ... (8H)

It is said that ... (8H)

There are a number of arguments for ... (8H)

It is sometimes argued that ... (8H)

Presenting the other side of the argument

However, ... (2H)

On the other hand, ... (2H)

Although it is true that ... , we should also remember that ... (2H)

Having said that, ... / That said, ... (2H)

And yet, ... (2H)

Some people take the opposite view ... (8H)

Opponents claim that ... (8H)

Moving onto another topic

I'd like to know / ask / hear about ... (3G)

Let's move on to ... (3G)

There's something else I'd like to talk / ask about, and that's ... (3G)

That brings me on to the subject of ... (3G)

Could I also ask you about ... ? (3G)

Is there anything else I should know about? (3G)

Paraphrasing

I'm not sure how to say it in English ... (3G)

I don't know what it's called in English ... (3G)

In other words ... (3G)

What I mean is ... (3G)

It's something you (use for) ... (3G)

It's a kind / sort of ... (3G)

Making a selection

I think I'll choose ... mainly because ... (4G)

I'm opting for ... and that's because ... (4G)

The best option would be the ... because ... (4G)

The reason why I'm (not) choosing the ... is that ... (4G)

I wouldn't go for the ... basically because ... (4G)

I wouldn't pick the ... for the reason that ... (4G)

Pausing for thought

Hmm, let me think. (5G)

Let me see what I can come up with. (5G)

I need a minute to recall ... (5G)

Nothing springs immediately to mind. (5G)

I suppose the last time was ... (5G)

I seem to remember it was in / at / on ... (5G)

Functions Bank

Presenting opinions
There's no doubt in my mind that (6F)
As far as I'm concerned (6F)
I believe very strongly that (6F)
I'm absolutely convinced that (6F)
Nobody can deny that (6F)
It's perfectly clear that (6F)
In my view, (9C)
Personally, (9C)
As I see it, (9C)
To my mind, (9C)
My impression is (9C)
I've a feeling that (9C)

13trongly believe (3C)	Asking for clarification
13tiongly believe (5C)	
Letronaly believe (QC)	I strongly believe (9C)

Sorry, do you think you could repeat that? (6G)	
I'm afraid I didn't quite catch that. (6G)	
Would you mind saying that again? (6G)	
What do you mean by ? (6G)	
Is that something like ? (6G)	
Is that the same ? (6G)	

Expressing a firm opinion

To my mind, (8G)	
In my opinion, (8G)	
I'm of the opinion that (8G	
I feel quite strongly that (8	G)
It is clear to me that (8G)	
I firmly believe that (8G)	

Counter claim and rebuttal

People	might say that , but I believe (8G)
It coul	d be argued that However, it seems to me that, (8G)
Some	people see it differently. For example, But I don't agree. (8G
While	it's true that , I feel that (8G)
While	this is a fair point. I don't think that (8G)

Summing up / Giving your opinion
In conclusion, (8H)
All things considered, (8H)
To sum up, (8H)
On balance, (8H)
All in all, (8H)
In my view / opinion, (8H)

Introducing a fact	
Actually, (9C)	
In fact, (9C)	
In reality, (9C)	
The truth is (9C)	
It's true that (9C)	
It's undeniable that (9C)	
Undeniably (9C)	
It's been proved that (9C)	

Justifying your opinion

The reason I think that is because (9G)	
The main reason is that (9G)	
Another thing is that (9G)	
On top of that, (9G)	
I definitely think that the is better, because (9G)	
For those reasons I think that (9G)	

Expressing a tentative opinion

I don't have any strong opinions about (9G)	
I'm not sure about that. Let me think. (9G)	
It could be argued that (9G)	
There might be a case for arguing that (9G)	
Thinking about it Leupnose that (9G)	



Unit I			start a family (v)	/start ə 'fæməli/	
			start school (v)	/sta:t sku:l/	
accuse (v)	/əˈkjuːz/	P	stop (v)	/stpp/	
addicted (to) (adj)	/əˈdɪktɪd/		suggest (v)	/sə'dʒest/	
be an) adult (n)	/ə'dʌlt/		(be in your) teens (n)	/ti:nz/	
advise (v)	/əd'vaɪz/		tell (v)	/tel/	
fford (v)	/əˈfɔːd/		thank for (v)	/θænk fo:/	
pologise (v)	/ə'pɒlədʒaɪz/		(be a) toddler (n)	/'todla/	
isk (v)	/a:sk/				
aware (of) (adj)	/a'wea/		try (v)	/trai/	
oe born (v)	/bi bə:n/		unhappy (with) (adj)	/An'hæpi/	
	/bi brost Ap/		want (v)	/wont/	
	/bi'kam ə 'grænpeərənt/		warn (v)	/worn/	
peg (v)	/beg/				
ouy a house or flat (v)	/bar a haus or flæt/		Unit 1		
	/senti'nearian/		a bit (adv)	/a bit/	
be a) centenarian (n)			absolutely (adv)	/æbsəˈluːtli/	
thoose (v)	/tʃu:z/		accessibility (n)	/ək,sesəˈbɪləti/	
continue (v)	/kənˈtɪnjuː/				
curious (about) (adj)	/'kjuorios/		affectionate (adj)	/əˈfekʃənət/	
lecide (v)	/dr'said/		afraid (adj)	/əˈfreɪd/	
deny (v)	/dr'naɪ/		alive (adj)	/əˈlaɪv/	
be) elderly (adj)	/'eldəli/		alone (adj)	/əˈləun/	
emigrate (v)	/'emigreit/		angry (adj)	/ˈæŋgri/	
end up (v)	/end Ap/		annoyed (adj)	/bicn'e/	
expect (v)	/ik'spekt/		asleep (adj)	/ə'sli:p/	
fall in love (v)	/fo:l in lav/		astonished (adj)	/ə'stonift/	
forget (v)	/fəˈget/		awful (adi)	/ˈɔːfl/	
get divorced (v)	/get di'voist/		bad-mannered (adj)	/ˌbæd 'mænəd/	
			bad-tempered (adj)	/bæd 'tempəd/	
get engaged (v)	/get in'geid3d/		be in the public eye (v)	/bi ın ðə 'pʌblɪk aɪ/	
get married (v)	/get 'mærid/				
get your first job (v)	/get jo: f3:st d3ob/		be in the public interest (v)		<u></u>
go on (v)	/gau on/		bossy (adj)	/'bosi/	
go to university (v)	/gəʊ tə ˌjuːnɪˈvɜːsəti/		cautious (adj)	/ˈkɔːʃəs/	
good (at) (adj)	/gud/		celebrities (n)	/sə'lebrətiz/	
grow up (phr v)	/grao Ap/		considerate (adj)	/kən'sıdərət/	
have a change of career (v)	/hav a tfeind3 by ka'ria/		content (n)	/kən'tent/	
hope (v)	/houp/		creative (adj)	/kri'eɪtɪv/	
(be an) infant (n)	/'infont/		critical (adj)	/'kritikl/	
	/in'herit/		cruel (adj)	/ˈkruːəl/	
etc.) (v)	THE		delighted (adj)	/dr'lartid/	
nsist on (v)	/in'sist on/		easy-going (adj)	/i:zi'qəom/	
keep (v)	/ki:p/		eccentric (adi)	/ik'sentrik/	
earn to drive (v)	/Isin to draiv/		ecstatic (adj)	/ik'stætik/	
					
eave home (v)	/li:v hoom/	X	exhausted (adj)	/ıgˈzɔ:stɪd/	
eave school (v)	/li:v sku:l/	·	extremely (adv)	/ık'stri:mli/	
ike (v)	/laɪk/		fascinated (adj)	/ˈfæsineitid/	
manage (v)	/mænidʒ/		feedback (n)	/ˈfiːdbæk/	
mention (v)	/menfn/		free press (n)	/fri: pres/	
be) middle-aged (adj)	/midl 'eid3d/		frightened (adj)	/'fraitnd/	
mind (v)	/maind/		furious (adj)	/'fjuorios/	
move house (v)	/mu:v haos/		glad (adj)	/glæd/	
obsessed (with) (adj)	/əb'sest/		happy (adj)	/ˈhæpi/	
offer (v)	/'pfə/		harass (v)	/ˈhærəs/	
pass away (phrv)	/pais əˈwei/		hardworking (adj)	/haid 'waikin/	
persuade (v)	/pals a well /palsweid/		hilarious (adj)	/hi'learias/	
orefer (v)	/pri'f3:/		industrious (adj)	/in'dastries/	-
promise (v)	/'promis/		insecure (adj)	/ˌɪnsɪˈkjuə/	
propose (v)	/prəˈpəuz/		interaction (n)	/ˌintərˈækʃn/	
emember (v)	/rı'membə/		invade someone's	/in'veid 'samwanz	
emind of (v)	/ri'maind pv/		privacy (v)	'prīvəsi/	
etire (v)	/rı'taıə/		investigative journalism (n)	/in'vestigativ	
sensitive (to) (adj)	/'sensətiv/			'dʒɜ:nəlɪzəm/	
settle down (phr v)	/setl daon/		journalist (n)	/'dʒ3:nəlist/	
shocked (about) (adj)	/fpkt/		light-hearted (adj)	/,lart 'hortid/	
spend (v)	/spend/		living (adj)	/'livin/	
			lonely (adj)	/ˈləunli/	
split up (phrv)	/split ap/		miserable (adj)	/ˈmɪzrəbl/	
start (v) start a business (v)	/sta:t/		open-minded (adj)	/pupan 'maindid/	
	/start ə 'bıznəs/		outgoing (adj)	/autgoun/	



paparazzi (n)	/ˌpæpəˈrætsi/		in fact	/ın fækt/	
passionate (adj)	/ˈpæʃənət/		in trouble	/in 'trabl/	
press regulators (n)	/pres 'regjuleitəz/		indecisive (adi)	/ˌindɪˈsaɪsɪv/	
privacy laws (n)	/privəsi lə:z/		irritated (adj)	/ˈiriteitid/	
provider (n)	/prəˈvaɪdə/		lose face	/lu:z feis/	
publicity scandal (n)	/pab'lisəti 'skændl/		miserable (adj)	/mızrəbl/	
pushy (adj)	/ˈpuʃi/		of course	/pv kots/	
quick-witted (adj)	/ˌkwik 'witid/		on purpose	/on 'ps:pəs/	
self-confident (adj)	/self 'konfidənt/	-	petty (adj)	/'peti/	
selfless (adj)	/*selfləs/		prevention (n)	/pri'venſn/	
shrewd (adj)	/fruid/		record (v)	/rɪˈkəɪd/	-
single-minded (adj) sleeping (adj)	/ˌsɪŋgl ˈmaɪndɪd/ /ˈsli:pɪŋ/		something gets on your nerves	/samθin gets on jo: naivz/	
spontaneous (adj)	/spon'ternios/		stressed (adj)	/strest/	
stalk (v)	/sto:k/		stunned (adj)	/stand/	
starving (adj)	/starvin/		under age	/ˈʌndəreɪdʒ/	
stingy (adj)	/*stind3i/		upbeat (adj)	/'apbirt/	
subscriber (n)	/səb'skraıbə/		violent (adj)	/'vaiələnt/	
sue for libel (v)	/su: fə 'laɪbl/		wave (n)	/weiv/	-
sympathetic (adj)	/ˌsɪmpəˈθetɪk/		1124.2		
tabloid press (n)	/ˌtæbləɪd 'pres/		Unit 3		
terrible (adj)	/terəbl/		annoyance (n)	/a'noions/	
terrified (adj)	/*terifaid/		anxiety (n)	/æŋˈzaɪəti/	
the press (n)	/ðə pres/		bill (n)	/bil/	
thick-skinned (adj) thrilled (adj)	/θιk 'skind/ /θrild/		biscuit (n)	/biskit/	
totally (adv)	/tautali/		bite your fingernails (v)	/bait jo: 'fingəneilz/	
untrustworthy (adj)	/an'trastwa:ði/		boredom (n) bow your head (v)	/'boidəm/ /bao jo: hed/	
vain (adi)	/vein/		candy (n)	/kændi/	
very (adv)	/*veri/		cell phone (n)	/selfoun/	
well behaved (adj)	/wel brhervd/		check (n)	/tʃek/	
wonderful (adj)	/"wandəfl/		clear your throat (v)	/kliə(r) jo: θrəut/	
			confusion (n)	/kənˈfjuːʒn/	
Unit 2			cookie (n)	/'koki/	
alarmed (adj)	/əˈlɑːmd/		cough (v)	/kpf/	
amused (adj)	/əˈmju:zd/		cover your mouth (v)	/kʌvə(r) jɔ: mauð/	-
anxious (adj)	/ˈæŋkʃəs/		cross your fingers (v)	/kros jo: 'fingəz/	
ashamed (adj)	/əˈʃeɪmd/		cross your legs (v)	/kros jo: legz/	
at fault at first	/at failt/ /at faist/		deep-throated (adj) disapproval (n)	/di:p 'θrəotid/ /,disə'pru:vl/	
at rirst at once		-	disgust (n)	/dis'qast/	
at stake	/ət wʌns/ /ət steik/		event (n)	/t'vent/	
be down in the dumps	/bi daon in ðə damps/		exchange presents (v)	/iks'tfeind3 'preznts/	
be furning	/bi fju:mɪŋ/		family gathering (n)	/ˈfæməli ˈgæðərɪŋ/	
be green with envy	/bi grim wið 'envi/		fear (n)	/fiə/	
be in two minds about	/bi in tu: maindz ə'baot		fidget (v)	/fid3it/	
something	'sʌmθɪŋ/		film (n)	/film/	
be on edge	/bi on edʒ/		flashlight (n)	/ˈflæʃlaɪt/	
be over the moon	/bi 'əovə(r) ðə mu:n/		flat (n) fold your arms (v)	/flæt/ /fəold_jɔ:(r) a:mz/	
be tearing your hair out bitter (adj)	/bi 'teəriŋ jɔ: heə(r) aut/ /'bitə/		friendliness (n)	/frendlinas/	
blow your top	/blau jar top/		frown (v)	/fraon/	
by mistake	/bai mi'steik/		gasp (v)	/garsp/	
combat (v)	/'kombæt/		give a thumbs up (v)	/qa zmaθ c vip/	
commit (v)	/kəˈmɪt/		give presents (v)	/giv 'preznts/	
content (adj)	/kən'tent/		grimace (v)	/ˈgrɪməs/	
cut (v)	/kat/		grin (v)	/grɪn/	
deter (v)	/dr'ta:/		happiness (n)	/ˈhæpinəs/	
disappointed (adj)	/disəˈpɔintid/		harelipped (adj) (Old- fashioned – now considered	/heə lipt/	
disillusioned (adj)	/ˌdɪsɪˈluːʒnd/		offensive. The accepted medical	al	
envious (adj) exasperated (adj)	/'envios/ /ɪg'zæspəreɪtɪd/		term is cleft lip /kleft lip/)		
for good	/ig/zæspəreitid/ /fə 'qud/		hiccup (v)	/hikap/	
frustrated (adj)	/fr/streitid/		highway (n)	/harwei/	
furious (adj)	/fjuorios/		ignorance (n)	/¹ignərəns/	
humiliated (adj)	/hjur'mıliertid/		indifference (n)	/in'difrens/	
hysterical (adj)	/hi'sterikl/		interest (n)	/'intrast/	-
in common	/in 'komən/		lift (n)	/lıft/	



ine (n)	/lous/		cottore (n)	(Neptuda/	
	/lain/		cottage (n)	/ˈkɒtɪdʒ/	
	/lon 'heəd/	S	couch-surfing (n)	/kautʃ 'sɜːfɪŋ/	
	/ləo set/		cruise (n)	/kru:z/	
	/'məobail/		cycling holiday (n)	/ˈsaɪklɪŋ ˈhɒlədeɪ/	
	/ˈməʊtəweɪ/		dingy (adj)	/ˈdɪndʒi/	
nod your head (v)	/npd jo: hed/		do some volunteer	/du: səm ˌvɒlən'tıə wɜ:k/	
pain (n)	/pein/		work (v)		
	/'pervmont/		dull (adj)	/dʌl/	
	/'petrəl/		early	/'s:li/	
	/point/		eat out (v)	/irt aut/	
	/paut/		ecotourism (n)	/ˈiːkəutuərɪzəm/	
	/pri'peə/		enjoy the nightlife (v)	/ın'dʒɔɪ ðə 'naɪtlaɪf/	
			fast	/farst/	
	/pablik 'holədei/	-			
	/pass jo: lips/	S	find adventure (v)	/faind əd'ventʃə/	
	/kju:/		friendly	/frendli/	
aise your eyebrows (v)	/reiz jo:(r) 'aibrauz/		get around (phr v)	/get əˈraond/	
	/skaol/	2	get away from it all (v)	/get ə'wei from it ɔːl/	
cratch your head (v)	/skrætf jo: hed/		get back (phr v)	/get bæk/	
	/feik jo: hed/		go off (phr v)	/gəu nf/	
	/ferm/		go off the beaten track (v)	/gəu of ðə 'bi:tn træk/	
	/fok/		guest house (n)	/'gest haus/	
	/ʃrʌg jɔː 'ʃəʊldəz/		hang out with your	/hæŋ aut wið jo: frendz/	
			friends (v)	. may and with joi freind2	
	/'saidwork/		have a lovely view (v)	/hæv ə 'lavli vju:/	
	/saɪ/		have new experiences (v)		
	/sl3:p/			/hæv nju: ık'spıəriənsız/	
neakers (n)	/'sni:kəz/		help with your bags (v)	/help wið jo: bægz/	
neeze (v)	/sni:z/		holiday camp (n)	/holədei kæmp/	
niff (v)	/snif/		holiday home (n)	/'hplədei həum/	
nore (v)	/sno:/		hospitable (adj)	/ho'spitəbl/	
	/su:vəˈnɪəz/		hotel (n)	/həu'tel/	
	/spefl difiz/		house swap (n)	/haos swop/	
			houseboat (n)	/'hausbaut/	
	/'spefl ə'keɪʒn/		inaccessible (adj)	/ˌinækˈsesəbl/	
	/sə'praɪz/	·	lately	/leitli/	
	/swirts/				
	/tæp/		light the campfire (v)	/lait ðə 'kæmpfaiə/	
hin-boned (adj)	/On bound/		luggage (n)	/'lʌgɪdʒ/	
oilet (n)	/'toilat/		meet people (v)	/mi:t 'pi:pl/	
orch (n)	/tortf/		mind-blowing (adj)	/maind bloom/	
raditional (meal/custom/	/trəˈdɪʃənl/		overcrowded (adj)	/ˌəuvəˈkraodɪd/	
gift) (n)			package holiday (n)	/'pækidʒ holədei/	
	/treinəz/		pamper yourself (v)	/ˈpæmpə jɔːˈself/	
	/tat/		pull up (phrv)	/'pul np/	
			put up the tent (v)	/put ap ða tent/	
	/weiv/				
	/wiŋk/		recharge your batteries (v)	/ˌriː'tʃɑːdʒ jɔ: 'bætəriz/	
awn (v)	/join/		remote (adj)	/rɪˈməut/	
			run-down (adj)	/'randaon/	
Jnit 4			safety (n)	/'seɪfti/	
	/adhrontfa thaladar/		see the sights (v)	/si: ðə saɪts/	
	/əd'ventʃə 'holədeɪ/			/self 'keitərin ə'paitmənt/	
	/ˌbiː ən 'biː/	-	set off	/set of/	
	/'bækpækɪŋ/		sleep rough (v)	/sli:p raf/	
	/bi 'fızıkli 'æktıv/		stop over (phr v)	/'stopouvo/	
each holiday (n)	/bi:tʃ 'hɒlədeı/		take in (phrv)		
each house (n)	/birtf haos/			/terk in/	
	/bo:dəm/		take it easy (v)	/terk it 'iizi/	
	/breθteikin/		taste a local dish (v)	/teist ə 'ləukl dıʃ/	
	/broidn joi hə'raiznz/		tent (n)	/tent/	
			time (n)	/taim/	
	/ˈkæbɪn/		time-share apartment (n)	/taim feə(r) ə'pa:tmənt/	
	/ˈkæmpə væn/		travel light (v)	/'trævl laɪt/	
	/'kæmpɪŋ/		travel sickness (n)	/'trævl 'sıknəs/	
	/'kæmpsaɪt/		try local food (v)	/trai 'lookl fuid/	
aravan (n)	/'kærəvæn/				
	/'sıti breık/		unique (adj)	/ju'ni:k/	
	/ˈkləusli/		unspoiled (adj)	/ˌnr\spoild/	
		2	vibrant (adj)	/'vaibrent/	
losely				4 1 4	
come across (phr v)	/kam əˈkrɒs/		villa (n)	/'vɪlə/	
losely ome across (phr v) omfort (n)	/'kamfət/				
losely ome across (phr v) omfort (n) ommercialised (adj)	/ˈkʌmfət/ /kəˈmɜːʃəlaɪzd/		volunteering (n)	/ˌvɒlənˈtɪərɪŋ/	
conselv come across (phrv) comfort (n) commercialised (adj) convenience (n)	/'kamfət/				



			chest infection (n)	/tfest in'fekfn/	
Unit 5			cholesterol (n)	/kəˈlestərɒl/	
admire (v)	/ədˈmaɪə/		(be) congested (adj)	/kənˈdʒestɪd/	
admire (v) adore (v)	/ədmaiə/		convenient (adj)	/kən'vi:niənt/	
background (n)	/bækgraond/		convert (v)	/kən'va:t/	
be (very) close (to) (v)	/bi 'klaus/		cough (n)	/kof/	
be on the same	/bi on δο seim 'weivlenθ		cough medicine (n)	/kof 'medisn/	
wavelength (as) (v)	æz/		cut (n)	/knt/	
be wary of (v)	/bi 'weəri pv/		dairy products (n)	/'deəri 'prodakts/	
compliment (sb on sth) (v	/'kompliment/		densely populated (adj)	/densli 'popjuleitid/	
confirm (v)	/kən'fa:m/			/ˈdɪzi/	
despise (v)	/di'spaiz/		do aerobics (v)	/du: eəˈrəobiks/	
envy (v)	/envi/		energy (n)	/enadʒi/	
feel sorry for (v)	/fi:l 'spri fo:/		English-speaking (adj) expensive (adj)	/'ıŋglıʃ -spi:kıŋ/ /ık'spensıv/	
findings (n)	/'faindins/		far-reaching (adj)	/fa: 'ri:tfin/	
flatter (sb) (v)	/ˈflætə/		fat (n)	/fæt/	
gene (n)	/dʒiːn/		(feel) fatigued (adj)	/fə'ti:qd/	
guinea pig (n) have a lot in common	/ˈgɪni pɪg/ /həv ə lot ɪn ˈkɒmən/		fever (n)	/fi:və/	
(with) (v)	/Hav a lot III kolilali/		fibre (n)	/ˈfaɪbə/	
have nothing in common	/hav 'natin in 'koman/		flu (n)	/flu:/	
(with) (v)			fracture (n)	/ˈfræktʃə/	
immune system (n)	/ı'mju:n sıstəm/		free choice (n)	/fri: tʃɔɪs/	
in depth	/,in 'depθ/		fresh (adj)	/freʃ/	
insult (sb) (v)	/in'salt/		go running (v)	/gəu 'rʌnɪŋ/	
lecture (sb about sth) (v)	/'lektfə/		heartburn (n)	/hartbarn/	
look down on (v)	/luk daun nn/		high-calorie (adj)	/haɪ 'kæləri/	
look up to (v)	/lok Ap ta/		highly paid (adj)	/haili peid/	
mate (n)	/meit/		ingredient (n)	/in'gri:diənt/	
nag (sb about sth) (v)	/næg/		insect sting (n)	/'insekt stin/	
not see eye to eye (with)	/not si: aı tə aı wıð/		intensity (n) keep fit (v)	/in'tensoti/ /ki:p fit/	
offend (sb) (v)	/ə'fend/		lift weights (v)	/ki:p iii/ /lift weits/	
offspring (n)	/bfsprin/		light-hearted (adj)	/last 'hostid/	
organ (n)	/'argan/		lots of liquids (n)	/lots ov 'likwidz/	
paper (n)	/'perpa/		low-calorie (adj)	/ləo 'kæləri/	
praise (sb for sth) (v)	/preiz/		mineral (n)	/ˈmɪnərəl/	
proof (n)	/pru:f/		mouth-watering (adj)	/mauθ worterin/	
release (v)	/rɪ'liːs/		much-needed (adj)	/matf ni:did/	
respect (v)	/ri'spekt/		(feel) nauseous (adj)	/hoszias/	
tease (sb about sth) (v)	/ti:z/		nose bleed (n)	/'nəuzbli:d/	
tell (sb) off (for sth) (v)	/tel of/		nutrient (n)	/'nju:trient/	
trust (v)	/trast/	-	nuts (n)	/nats/	
warn (sb about sth) (v)	/wsin/		oil (n)	/bil/	
Unit 6			old-fashioned (adj)	/ould 'fæfənd/	
			painkillers (n)	/peinkiləz/	
absent-minded (adj)	/æbsənt 'maındıd/		pedal on a bike (v) penicillin (n)	/'pedl on a bark/ /penr'silin/	
ache (v)	/erk/		play a team sport (v)	/penrsiiin/ /plei ə ti:m sport/	
ache (n)	/eɪk/		poultry (n)	/poultri/	
addictive (adj)	/ə'dıktıv/ /ə'drenəlin/		preservative (n)	/pri'z3:vətiv/	
adrenalin (n) antacid (n)	/ænt'æsid/		processed (adj)	/'prousest/	
antibiotics (n)	/æntibarbtiks/		processed food (n)	/prousest fuid/	
antihistamine (n)	/ænti'histəmi:n/		processed meat (n)	/prousest mirt/	
anti-inflammatories (n)	/'ænti m'flæmətriz/		protein (n)	/'prooti:n/	
antiseptic cream (n)	/ænti'septik kri:m/		pump (v)	/pamp/	
attend a fitness class (v)	/ə'tend ə 'fıtnəs kla:s/	-		/pof mar'self to do 'limit/	
badly paid (adj)	/bædli peid/		rash (n)	/ræʃ/	
bandage (n)	/*bændid3/		record-breaking (adj)	/ˈrekəɪd breɪkɪŋ/	
be competitive (v)	/bi kəm'petətiv/		rest (n)	/rest/	
beat an opponent (v)	/bi:t æn ə'pəunənt/		salt (n)	/solt/	
bruise (n)	/bru:z/		seeds (n)	/si:dz/	
burn (v)	/bain/		sore throat (n)	/so: 0raut/	
burst (n)	/bast/		sprain (n) (feel) stiff (adj)	/sprein/ /stif/	
calcium (n)	/ˈkælsiəm/		sugar (n)	/stit/ /'fuga/	
calories (n)	/ˈkæləriz/		(be) swollen (adi)	/ juga/ / swaulan/	
carbohydrate (n)	/ˌkɑːbəʊˈhaɪdreɪt/		tablets (n)	/tæbləts/	
cheap (adj)	/tʃirp/				



asty (adj)	/teisti/	photoshop (a picture, an	/ˈfəutəuʃɒp/	
emperature (n)	/'temprətʃə/	image, etc.) (v)	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	<i>by</i>
hroat sweets (n)	/θrəot swi:ts/	play on (phr v)	/plei on/	
ime-saving (adj)	/taim 'servin/	 preference (for) (n)	/'prefrons/	
alue for money (adj)	/'vælju: fə 'mʌni/	promise (v)	/'promis/	
irus (n)	/'vairəs/	reason (for) (n)	/ˈriːzn/	
itamins (n)	/'vitaminz/	reveal (a secret, the truth,	/rı'vi:l/	
vell-respected (adj)	/wel ri'spektid/	etc.) (v)		
vell-written (adj)	/wel 'ritn/	 rise (in) (n)	/raiz/	
vholegrain (n)	/həolgrein/	 sarcastic (adj)	/sar'kæstik/	
vill power (n)	/wilpaoə/	 set up (phr v)	/set 'Ap/	
vound (n)	/wu:nd/	solution (to) (n)	/səˈlu:ʃn/	
C-ray (n)	/eks rei/	 surprised (adj)	/sə'praizd/	
Jnit 7		swear that / to do sth $$ (v)	/sweə ðæt / tə du: 'sʌmθɪŋ/	
Jnit /		take in (phr v)	/terk in/	
ddiction (to) (n)	/əˈdɪkʃn/	 tell a lie (v)	/tel ə laı/	
idmit (v)	/əd'mɪt/	tell the truth (v)	/tel ðə tru:θ/	
ngry (adj)	/ˈæŋgri/	zoom in on (phr v)	/zu:m in on/	
nnounce (v)	/ə'naons/		J. Carrier of the Control of the Con	
elief (in) (n)	/bi'li:f/	Unit 8		
iased (adj)	/'baiəst/			
heat (v)	/tʃi:t/	arrest (v)	/əˈrest/	
ontrol (over) (n)	/kənˈtrəul/	ban (v)	/bæn/	
leceive sb (v)	/dr'si:v 'sambədi/	campaign against (v)	/kæm'pein ə'geinst/	
lemand (for) (n)	/dr'ma:nd/	censorship (n)	/'sensəʃɪp/	
leny (v)	/dr'nar/	corruption (n)	/kəˈrʌpʃn/	
lependence (on) (n)	/dr'pendons/	decide (v)	/di'said/	
lifference (between) (n)	/difrans/	demonstrate (v)	/'demanstreit/	
lirect (adi)	/dar'rekt/	demonstrate/protest	/'demonstreit / 'proutest	
lisguise (the truth, the	/dis'gaiz/	 against (sth) (v)	əˈgeɪnst/	
fact that, etc.) (v)	rato ganz	 disease (n)	/dı'zi:z/	
lishonest (adj)	/dis'pnist/	famine (n)	/ˈfæmɪn/	
ffect (on) (n)	/i'fekt/	gang (n)	/gæŋ/	
enthusiastic (adj)	/ınˌθju:ziˈæstɪk/	gender inequality (n)	/ˈdʒendə(r) ,ını'k woləti/	
thical (adj)	/'eθιk1/	get ahead (phrv)	/get ə'hed/	
evidence (of) (n)	/evidons/	global warming (n)	/glaobl 'wa:min/	
exaggerate (v)	/ıgˈzædʒəreɪt/	globalisation (n)	/gləobəlar'zerfn/	
exaggerate (the truth, a	/ig'zædʒəreit/	go on a demonstration/a	/gou on a ,demon'streifn	
difficulty, etc.) (v)		march (v)	/ ə ma:tʃ/	
existence (of) (n)	/ig'zistəns/	help out (phr v)	/help aot/	
explain (v)	/ık'splein/	hide (v)	/hard/	
abricate (a story,	/ˈfæbrikeit/	hold a rally (v)	/həuld ə ˈræli/	9
evidence, etc.) (v)		hold up placards (v)	/həuld ʌp 'plækaːdz/	
ib (v)	/fib/	homelessness (n)	/'həumləsnəs/	
ind out (phr v)	/famd aut/	immigration (n)	/ˌimɪˈgreɪʃn/	
ool sb (v)	/fu:l 'sambədi/	investigate (v)	/in'vestigeit/	
iole up (phr v)	/həul ʌp/	keep (v)	/ki:p/	
ionest (adj)	/bnist/	listen to speeches (v)	/ˈlɪsn tə ˈspiːtʃiz/	
ypocritical (adj)	/hipə'kritikl/	misunderstood (adj)	/,misandə'stud/	
ncrease (in) (n)	/ˈɪŋkriːs/	nuclear weapons (n)	/'nju:kliə 'wepənz/	
nsist (v)	/in'sist/	organise a protest (v)	/'organarz a 'prautest/	
nterest (in) (n)	/'introst/	put in (phr v)	/pot in/	
et on (phr v)	/let pn/	racism (n)	/'reisizəm/	
e (about sth / to sb) (v)	/lai/	resign (v)	/rı'zaın/	
nake an excuse (v)	/meik ən ik'skjuis/	set up (phr v)	/set 'ap/	
nake out (phr v)	/meik aut/	shout slogans (v)	/faut 'slauganz/	
nanipulate (sb) (v)	/mo'nipjuleit 'sambədi/	sign (v)	/sam/	
nanipulative (adi)	/mo'nipjalett skintodal/	sign a petition (v)	/sam ə pə'tıʃn/	
nislead sb (v)	/instribedi//	social conscience (n)	/səufl 'konfəns/	
need (for) (n)	/ni:d/	squeeze in (phr v)	/skwi:z ɪn/	
ervous (adj)	/ˈnɜːvəs/	 stand for election (v)	/stænd fo:(r) r'lekʃn/	
bjection (to) (n)	/ab'dzekfn/	 step down (phrv)	/step daon/	
bsession (with) (n)		support a campaign (v)	/sə'pə:t ə kæm'pein/	
	/əbˈseʃn/	 take on (phr v)	/terk on/	
open (adj)	/ˈoupən/	 tell (v)	/tel/	
wn up (to sth) (v)	/oun Ap/	terrorism (n)	/terorizom/	
ass sth/sb off as (v)	/pais 'sʌmθiŋ / 'sʌmbədi of æz/	 think up (phr v)	/Oink Ap/	
	OI GEL	thoughtful (adj)	/ˈθəːtfl/	



vandalism (n)

wishlist (n)

/vændəlizəm/

/wɪʃlɪst/

thoughtless (adj)	/ˈ0ɔːtləs/	
threatening (adj)	/'tretnin/	
throw (v)	/θεου/	
unemployment (n)	/,\nim'ploiment/	
vandalism (n)	/"vændəlizəm/	
volunteer (n)	/sulan'tia/	
vote in elections (v)	/voot in i'lekfns/	
wait (v)	/weit/	
wonder (v)	/"wandə/	-
write to a politician (v)	/rait tu: ə ˌpɒləˈtɪʃn/	
Unit 9		
afford (v)	/ə'fə:d/	
basket (n)	/'ba:skit/	
be a rip-off	/bi ə rɪp of/	
be broke	/bi brauk/	
be dirt cheap	/bi da:t tfi:p/	
be hard up	/bi ha:d Ap/	
be rolling in it	/bi 'rəulın ın ıt/	
be well off	/bi wel pf/	
brand (n)	/brænd/	
budget (v)	/'bad3it/	
burglar (n)	/'basgla/	
burglary (n)	/ˈbɜːgləri/	
burgle (v)	/ˈbaɪql/	
check out (phrv)	/tfek aut/	
checkout (n)	/tfekaut/	
commercial (n)	/kəˈmɜ;ʃ1/	
consumer (n)	/kənˈsjuːmə/	
delivery (n)	/dr'Irvəri/	
endorsement (n)	/in'do:smənt/	
fork out (v)	/fo:k aut/	
get into debt (phr v)	/get 'intə det/	
haggle (v)	/hægl/	
item (n)	/artəm/	
jingle (n)	/'dʒmgl/	
knock down (phrv)	/*nok daon/	
launch (n)	/lointf/	
logo (n)	/'laugau/	
notification (n)	/ˌnəutɪfɪˈkeɪʃn/	
overcharge (v)	/puvəˈtʃɑːdʒ/	
overspend (v)	/ˌəuvəˈspend/	
pick up a bargain (v)	/'pik ap ə 'bargın/	
review (n)	/rı'vju:/	
rip off (phrv)	/rip 'of/	-
rob (v)	/rpb/	
robber (n)	/'robə/	
robbery (n)	/ˈrɒbəri/	
scan (v)	/skæn/	
shop around (phr v)	/fop əˈraond/	
shoplift (v)	/ˈʃoplɪft/	
shoplifter (n)	/ˈʃɒplɪftə/	
shoplifting (n)	/'ʃopliftiŋ/	
slogan (n)	/slaugan/	
snap up (phrv)	/snæp Ap/	
splash out (phr v)	/splæf aut/	
steal (v)	/sti:l/	-
theft (n)	/θeft/	
thief (n)	/Oct/	
track (v)	/træk/	
vandal (n)	/ˈvændl/	
vandalise (v)	/'vændəlaiz/	
vandalism (n)	/vændəlizəm/	

Irregular verbs

Base form	Past simple	Past participle
oe .	was / were	been
ecome	became	become
egin	began	begun
end	bent	bent
ite	bit	bitten
low	blew	blown
reak	broke	broken
ring	brought	brought
uild	built	built
urn	burned / burnt	burned / burnt
ıy	bought	bought
an	could	been able to
itch	caught	caught
noose	chose	chosen
ome	came	come
st	cost	cost
ıt	cut	cut
)	did	done
raw	drew	drawn
rink	drank	drunk
ive	drove	driven
	No. Comment	
at	ate	eaten
II	fell	fallen
el	felt	felt
ght	fought	fought
nd	found	found
/	flew	flown
orget	forgot	forgotten
et	got	got
ve	gave	given
)	went	gone
row	grew	grown
ang	hung	hung
ave	had	had
ear	heard	heard
ide	hid	hidden
it	hit	hit
ер	kept	kept
now	knew	known
у	laid	laid
ad	led	led
	learned / learnt	learned / learn
arn	learned / learnit	

Base form	Past simple	Past participle
lend	lent	lent
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
overcome	overcame	overcome
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown / showed
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
smell	smelled / smelt	smelled / smelt
speak	spoke	spoken
spell	spelled / spelt	spelled / spelt
spend	spent	spent
spill	spilled / spilt	spilled / spilt
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
	*	*
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written



مجموعه *تخصصے* آیلتس مترز

ارائه جدیدترین منابع زبان انگلیسی و آمادگی آزمون آیلتس

در دو نسخه چاپی و فایل های الکترونیکی

جنرال و آکادمیک

با آیلتس مترز فقط به نمره 9 آیلتس فکر کن



آيلتس مترز نامي معتبر وشناخته شده











